

DIRECTORATE OF DISTANCE EDUCATION

UNIVERSITY OF NORTH BENGAL

MASTERS OF SCIENCE-MATHEMATICS

SEMESTER -I

ANALYSIS OF SEVERAL VARIABLES

DEMATH1SCORE3

BLOCK-1

UNIVERSITY OF NORTH BENGAL

Postal Address:

The Registrar,

University of North Bengal,

Raja Rammohunpur,

P.O.-N.B.U.,Dist-Darjeeling,

West Bengal, Pin-734013,

India.

Phone: (O) +91 0353-2776331/2699008

Fax:(0353) 2776313, 2699001

Email: regnbu@sancharnet.in ; regnbu@nbu.ac.in

Website: www.nbu.ac.in

First Published in 2019



All rights reserved. No Part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without permission in writing from University of North Bengal. Any person who does any unauthorised act in relation to this book may be liable to criminal prosecution and civil claims for damages. This book is meant for educational and learning purpose. The authors of the book has/have taken all reasonable care to ensure that the contents of the book do not violate any existing copyright or other intellectual property rights of any person in any manner whatsoever. In the even the Authors has/ have been unable to track any source and if any copyright has been inadvertently infringed, please notify the publisher in writing for corrective action.

FOREWORD

The Self-Learning Material (SLM) is written with the aim of providing simple and organized study content to all the learners. The SLMs are prepared on the framework of being mutually cohesive, internally consistent and structured as per the university's syllabi. It is a humble attempt to give glimpses of the various approaches and dimensions to the topic of study and to kindle the learner's interest to the subject

We have tried to put together information from various sources into this book that has been written in an engaging style with interesting and relevant examples. It introduces you to the insights of subject concepts and theories and presents them in a way that is easy to understand and comprehend.

We always believe in continuous improvement and would periodically update the content in the very interest of the learners. It may be added that despite enormous efforts and coordination, there is every possibility for some omission or inadequacy in few areas or topics, which would definitely be rectified in future.

We hope you enjoy learning from this book and the experience truly enrich your learning and help you to advance in your career and future endeavours.



ANALYSIS OF SEVERAL VARIABLES

BLOCK 1

Unit - 1: Topology	7
Unit - 2: Functions Of Several Variables	34
Unit - 3: Local Properties Of Continuous Functions	64
Unit - Iv: Differential Calculus Of Real-Valued Functions Of Several Variables	95
Unit - 5: Transition To The Case Of A Relation	126
Unit - 6: Taylor's Theorem, Maxima And Minima	160
Unit - 7: A Sufficient Condition For A Constrained Extremum	193

BLOCK 2

Unit VIII	The Basic Rules Of Differentiation And The Arithmetic Operations
Unit IX	The Basic Theorems Of Differential Calculus
Unit X	The Riemann Integral In N Variables
Unit XI	Connected Sets
Unit XII	Differentiation Of Vector-Valued Functions
Unit XIII	Multivariable Differential Calculus
Unit XIV	Systems Of Differential Equations And Vector Fields

BLOCK 1 ANALYSIS OF SEVERAL VARIABLES

Introduction to the Block

In this block we will go through In mathematics advanced calculus whose aim is to provide a firm logical foundation of analysis of calculus and a course in linear algebra treats analysis in one variable & analysis in several variables.

Unit I Deals with Topology

Unit II Deals with The Space Of Linear Transformations From \mathbb{R}^m To \mathbb{R}^n

Unit III Deals with Local Properties Of Continuous Functions

Unit IV Deals with The Basic Facts Of Differential Calculus Of Real-Valued Functions Of Several Variables

Unit V Deals with Transition To The Case Of A Relation

Unit VI Deals with Taylor's Theorem

Unit VII Deals with A Sufficient Condition For A Constrained Extremum

UNIT - 1: TOPOLOGY

STRUCTURE

1.0 Objectives

1.1 Introduction

1.2 Topology

1.3 Topological spaces

1.4 Constructions with topological spaces

1.5 Properties of topological spaces

1.6 One variable calculus

1.7 The differential calculus of functions of several variables

1.8 Let Us Sum Up

1.9 Keywords

1.10 Questions for Review

1.11 Answers to Check Your Progress

1.12 References

1.0 OBJECTIVES

After studying this unit, you should be able to:

Learn, Understand about Topology

Learn, Understand about Topological spaces

Learn, Understand about Constructions with topological spaces

Learn, Understand about Properties of topological spaces

Learn, Understand about One variable calculus

Learn, Understand about The differential calculus of functions of several variables

1.1 INTRODUCTION

In mathematics advanced calculus whose aim is to provide a firm logical foundation of analysis of calculus and a course in linear algebra treats analysis in one variable & analysis in several variables

Topology, Metric Spaces, Topological spaces, Constructions with topological spaces, Properties of topological spaces, One variable calculus, The differential calculus of functions of several variables

1.2 TOPOLOGY

METRIC SPACES

A Map $f: \mathbb{R}^M \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ between Euclidean Spaces is Continuous iff

$$\forall \epsilon > 0 \exists \delta > 0 \forall x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n \quad d(x, y) < \delta \implies d(f(x), f(y)) < \epsilon$$

$$\text{Where } d(x, y) = \|x - y\| = \sqrt{(x_1 - y_1)^2 + \dots + (x_n - y_n)^2} \in \mathbb{R}_{>0}$$

is the Euclidean distance between two points x, y in \mathbb{R}^n .

Example (Examples of continuous maps.)

1. The addition map $a: \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, $x = (x_1, x_2) \mapsto x_1 + x_2$;
2. The multiplication map $m: \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, $x = (x_1, x_2) \mapsto x_1 x_2$;

The proofs that these maps are continuous are simple estimates that you probably remember from calculus. Since the continuity of all the maps we'll look at in these notes is proved by expressing them in terms of the maps a and m , we include the proofs of continuity of a and m for completeness.

Proof. To prove that the addition map a is continuous, suppose $x = (x_1, x_2) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ and $\epsilon > 0$ are given. We claim that for $\delta := \epsilon/2$ and $y = (y_1, y_2) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ with $d(x, y) < \delta$ we have $d(a(x), a(y)) < \epsilon$ and hence a is a continuous function. To prove the claim, we note that $d(x, y) = \sqrt{|x_1 - y_1|^2 + |x_2 - y_2|^2}$

and hence $|x_1 - y_1| < d(x, y)$, $|x_2 - y_2| < d(x, y)$. It follows that

$$d(a(x), a(y)) = |a(x) - a(y)| =$$

$$|x_1 + x_2 - y_1 - y_2| \leq |x_1 - y_1| + |x_2 - y_2| \leq 2d(x, y) <$$

$$2\delta = \epsilon.$$

To prove that the multiplication map m is continuous, we claim that for $\delta := \min\{1, \epsilon / (|x_1| + |x_2| + 1)\}$ and $y = (y_1, y_2) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ with $d(x, y) < \delta$ we have $d(m(x), m(y)) < \epsilon$ and hence m is a continuous function. The claim follows from the following estimates:

$$d(m(y), m(x)) = |y_1 y_2 - x_1 x_2| = |y_1 y_2 - x_1 y_2 + x_1 y_2 - x_1 x_2|$$

$$\leq |y_1 y_2 - x_1 y_2| + |x_1 y_2 - x_1 x_2| = |y_1 - x_1| |y_2| + |x_1| |y_2 - x_2|$$

$$\leq d(x, y)(|y_2| + |x_1|) \leq d(x, y)(|x_2| + |y_2| + |x_1|)$$

$$< d(x, y)(|x_1| + |x_2| + 1) < 8(|x_1| + |x_2| + 1) < \epsilon$$

Theorem. The function $d: \mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{>0}$ has the following properties:

1. $d(x, y) = 0$ if and only if $x = y$;
2. $d(x, y) = d(y, x)$ (symmetry);
3. $d(x, y) \leq d(x, z) + d(z, y)$ (triangle inequality)

Definition. A metric space is a set X equipped with a map

$d: X \times X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{>0}$ with properties (1)-(3) above. A map $f: X \rightarrow Y$ between metric spaces X, Y is continuous if condition is satisfied. an isometry if $d(f(x), f(y)) = d(x, y)$ for all $x, y \in X$;

Two metric spaces X, Y are homeomorphic (resp. isometric) if there are continuous maps (resp. isometries) $f: X \rightarrow Y$ and $g: Y \rightarrow X$ which are inverses of each other.

Example . An important class of examples of metric spaces are subsets of \mathbb{R}^n .

1. The n -disk $D^n := \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid |x| < 1\} \subset \mathbb{R}^n$, and $D_r^n := \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid |x| < r\}$, the n -disk of radius $r > 0$. The dilation map $D^n \rightarrow D_r^n$ is $x \mapsto rx$.

Notes

is a homeomorphism between D^n and Df with inverse given by multiplication by $1/r$. However, these two metric spaces are not isometric for $r \neq 1$. To observe this, define the diameter $\text{diam}(X)$ of a metric space X by $\text{diam}(X) := \sup \{ d(x, y) \mid x, y \in X \} \in \mathbb{R}_{>0} \cup \{ \infty \}$.

For example, $\text{diam}(Df) = 2r$. It is easy to observe that if two metric spaces X, Y are isometric, then their diameters agree. In particular, the disks Df and Df' are not isometric unless $r=r'$.

2. The n -sphere $S^n := \{ x \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1} \mid |x|=1 \} \subset \mathbb{R}^{n+1}$.

3. The torus $T = \{ v \in \mathbb{R}^3 \mid d(v, C) = r \}$ for $0 < r < 1$. Here

$C = \{ (x, y, 0) \mid x^2 + y^2 = 1 \} \subset \mathbb{R}^3$ is the unit circle in xy -plane, and $d(v, C) = \inf_{w \in C} d(v, w)$ is the distance between v and C .

4. The general linear group

$$\text{GL}_n(\mathbb{R}) = \{ \text{vector space isomorphisms } f: \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n \} \\ = \{ (v_1, \dots, v_n) \mid v_i \in \mathbb{R}^n, \det(v_1, \dots, v_n) \neq 0 \}$$

$$= \{ \text{invertible } n \times n \text{-matrices} \} \subset \mathbb{R}^{n \times n} \cong \mathbb{R}^{n^2}$$

Here we think of (v_1, \dots, v_n) as an $n \times n$ -matrix with column vectors v_i , and the bijection is the usual one in linear algebra that sends a linear map $f: \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ to the matrix $(f(e_1), \dots, f(e_n))$ whose column vectors are the images of the standard basis elements $e_i \in \mathbb{R}^n$.

5. The special linear group

$$\text{SL}_n(\mathbb{R}) = \{ (v_1, \dots, v_n) \mid v_i \in \mathbb{R}^n, \det(v_1, \dots, v_n) = 1 \} \subset \mathbb{R}^{n^2}$$

6. The orthogonal group

$$\text{O}(n) = \{ \text{linear isometries } f: \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n \} \\ = \{ (v_1, \dots, v_n) \mid v_i \in \mathbb{R}^n, v_i \text{'s are orthonormal} \} \subset \mathbb{R}^{n^2}$$

Collection of vectors $v_i \in \mathbb{R}^n$ is orthonormal if $|v_i|=1$ for all i , and v_i is perpendicular to v_j for $i \neq j$.

The special orthogonal group

$$SO(n) = \{(v_1, \dots, v_n) \in O(n) \mid \det(v_1, \dots, v_n) = 1\} \subset \mathbb{R}^n$$

7. The Stiefel manifold

$$\begin{aligned} V_k(\mathbb{R}^n) &= \{\text{linear isometries } f: \mathbb{R}^k \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n\} \\ &= \{(v_1, \dots, v_k) \mid v_i \in \mathbb{R}^n, v_j \text{'s are orthonormal}\} \subset \mathbb{R}^{kn} \end{aligned}$$

Example . The following maps between metric spaces are continuous.

While it is possible to prove their continuity using the definition of continuity, it will be much simpler to prove their continuity by 'building' these maps using compositions and products from the continuous maps and Every polynomial function $f: \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is continuous is of the form $f(x_1, \dots, x_n) = \sum_{i_1, \dots, i_n} a_{i_1, \dots, i_n} x_1^{i_1} \dots x_n^{i_n}$ for $a_1, \dots, a_n \in \mathbb{R}$.

Let $M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{R}) = \mathbb{R}^{n^2}$ be the set of $n \times n$ matrices. Then the map

$$M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{R}) \times M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{R}) \rightarrow M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{R}), (A, B) \mapsto AB$$

given by matrix multiplication is continuous. Here we use the fact that a map to the product $M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{R}) = \mathbb{R}^n \times \dots \times \mathbb{R}$ is continuous if and only if each component map is continuous and each matrix entry of AB is a polynomial and hence a continuous function of the matrix entries of A and B . Restricting to the invertible matrices $GL_n(\mathbb{R}) \subset M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{R})$, we observe that the multiplication map $GL_n(\mathbb{R}) \times GL_n(\mathbb{R}) \rightarrow GL_n(\mathbb{R})$ is continuous. The same holds for the subgroups $SO(n) \subset O(n) \subset GL_n(\mathbb{R})$.

The map $GL_n(\mathbb{R}) \rightarrow GL_n(\mathbb{R}), A \mapsto A^{-1}$ is continuous for the subgroups of $GL_n(\mathbb{R})$. The Euclidean metric on

\mathbb{R}^n given by $d(x, y) = \sqrt{(x_1 - y_1)^2 + \dots + (x_n - y_n)^2}$ for $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n$

is not the only reasonable metric on \mathbb{R}^n . Another metric on \mathbb{R}^n is given by

$$d_i(x, y) = 5^{|x_i - y_i|}$$

The question arises whether it can happen that a map $f: \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ is continuous with respect to one of these metrics, but not with respect to the other. To observe that this doesn't happen, it is useful to characterize continuity of a map $f: X \rightarrow Y$ between metric spaces X, Y in a way that involves the metrics on X and Y .

This alternative characterization will be based on the following notion of "open subsets" of a metric space.

Definition. Let X be a metric space. A subset $U \subset X$ is open if for every point $x \in U$ there is some $\epsilon > 0$ such that $B_\epsilon(x) \subset U$. Here $B_\epsilon(x) = \{ y \in X \mid d(y, x) < \epsilon \}$ is the ball of radius ϵ around x .

To illustrate this, let's look at examples of subsets of \mathbb{R}^n equipped with the Euclidean metric. The subset $D^{\text{TM}} = \{ v \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid \|v\| < r \} \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ is not open, since for a point $v \in D^{\text{TM}}$ with $\|v\| = r$ any open ball $B_\epsilon(v)$ with center v will contain points not in D^{TM} . By contrast, the subset $B_r(0) \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ is open, since for any $x \in B_r(0)$ the ball $B_\delta(x)$ of radius $\delta = r - \|x\|$ is contained in $B_r(0)$, since for $y \in B_\delta(x)$ by the triangle inequality we have

$$d(y, 0) < d(y, x) + d(x, 0) < \delta + \|x\| = (r - \|x\|) + \|x\| = r.$$

Theorem. A map $f: X \rightarrow Y$ between metric spaces is continuous if and only if $f^{-1}(V)$ is an open subset of X for every open subset $V \subset Y$.

Corollary. If $f: X \rightarrow Y$ and $g: Y \rightarrow Z$ are continuous maps, then so is their composition $g \circ f: X \rightarrow Z$.

Exercise . Let that d, d' are two metrics on a set X which are equivalent in the sense that there are constants $C, C' > 0$ such that $d(x, y) < C d_1(x, y)$ and $d_1(x, y) < C' d(x, y)$.

$y)$ and $d_1(x, y) < C'd(x, y)$ for all $x, y \in X$. Show that a subset $U \subset X$ is open with respect to d if and only if it is open with respect to d' .

Show that the Euclidean metric d and the metric on \mathbb{R}^n are equivalent. This shows in particular that a map $f: \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ is continuous w.r.t. d if and only if it is continuous w.r.t. d_1 .

1.3 TOPOLOGICAL SPACES

To define continuity of maps between metric spaces in terms of the open subsets of these metric space instead of the original. In fact, we can go one step further, forget about the metric on a set X altogether, and just consider a collection T of subsets of X that we declare to be "open". The next result summarizes the basic properties of open subsets of a metric space X , which then motivates the restrictions that we wish to put on such collections T .

Theorem. Open subsets of a metric space X have the following properties.

X and \emptyset are open.

Any union of open sets is open.

The intersection of any finite number of open sets is open.

Definition. A topological space is a set X together with a collection T of subsets of X , known open sets which are required to satisfy conditions (i), (ii) and (iii) of the Theorem above. The collection T is known a topology on X . The sets in T are known the open sets, and their complements in X are known closed sets. A subset of X can be neither closed nor open, either closed or open, or both.

A map $f: X \rightarrow Y$ between topological spaces X, Y is continuous if the inverse image $f^{-1}(V)$ of every open subset $V \subset Y$ is an open subset of X .

It is easy to observe that the composition of continuous maps is again continuous.

Notes

Examples of topological spaces.

Let X be a metric space, and T the collection of those subsets of X that are unions of balls $B_\epsilon(x)$ in X (i.e., the subsets which are open in the sense of Definition). Then T is a topology on X , the metric topology.

Let X be a set. Then $T = \{ \text{all subsets of } X \}$ is a topology, the discrete topology. We note that any map $f: X \rightarrow Y$ to a topological space Y is continuous. We will observe later that the only continuous maps $\mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow X$ are the constant maps.

Let X be a set. Then $T = \{ \emptyset, X \}$ is a topology, the indiscrete topology.

Sometimes it is convenient to define a topology U on a set X by first describing a smaller collection B of subsets of X , and then defining U to be those subsets of X that can be written as unions of subsets belonging to B . We've done this already when defining the metric topology: Let X be a metric space and let B be the collection of subsets of X of the form $B_\epsilon(x) := \{ y \in X \mid d(y, x) < \epsilon \}$ (the balls in X). Then the metric topology U on X consists of those subsets U which are unions of subsets belonging to B .

Theorem. Let B be a collection of subsets of a set X satisfying the following conditions

1. Every point $x \in X$ belongs to some subset $B \in B$.
2. If $B_1, B_2 \in B$, then for every $x \in B_1 \cap B_2$ there is some $B \in B$ with $x \in B$ and $B \subset B_1 \cap B_2$.

Then $T := \{ \text{unions of subsets belonging to } B \}$ is a topology on X .

Definition. If the above conditions are satisfied, we call the collection B is known a basis for the topology T or we say that B generates the topology T .

It is easy to check that the collection of balls in a metric space satisfies the above conditions and hence the collection of open subsets is a topology.

1.4 CONSTRUCTIONS WITH TOPOLOGICAL SPACES

Subspace topology

Definition . Let X be a topological space, and $A \subset X$ a subset. Then

$\mathcal{T} = \{ A \cap U \mid U \subset X \text{ open} \}$ is a topology on A known the subspace topology.

Theorem. Let X be a metric space and $A \subset X$. Then the metric topology on A agrees with the subspace topology on A (as a subset of X equipped with the metric topology).

Theorem. Let X, Y be topological spaces and Let A be a subset of X equipped with the subspace topology. Then the inclusion map $i: A \rightarrow X$ is continuous and a map $f: Y \rightarrow A$ is continuous if and only if the composition $i \circ f: Y \rightarrow X$ is continuous.

Product topology

Definition . The product topology on the Cartesian product $X \times Y = \{(x, y) \mid x \in X, y \in Y\}$ of topological spaces X, Y is the topology with basis

$B = \{ U \times V \mid U \subset X, V \subset Y \text{ open} \}$

The collection B obviously satisfies property of a basis; property holds since $(U \times V) \cap (U' \times V') = (U \cap U') \times (V \cap V')$. We note that the collection B is not a topology since the union of $U \times V$ and $U' \times V'$ is typically not a Cartesian product (e.g., draw a picture for the case where $X=Y=\mathbb{R}$ and U, U', V, V' are open intervals).

Theorem. The product topology on $\mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^m$ (with each factor equipped with the metric topology) agrees with the metric

Notes

topology on $\mathbb{R}^n = \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^n$.

Theorem. Let X, Y_1, Y_2 be topological spaces. Then the projection maps $p_i: Y_1 \times Y_2 \rightarrow Y_i$ are continuous and a map $f: X \rightarrow Y_1 \times Y_2$ is continuous if and only if the component maps $X \rightarrow Y_i$ are continuous for $i=1, 2$.

Theorem. Let X be a topological space and let $f, g: X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be continuous maps.

Then $f + g$ and $f \cdot g$ are continuous maps from X to \mathbb{R} . If $g(x) \neq 0$ for all $x \in X$, then also f/g is continuous.

Any polynomial function $f: \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is continuous.

The multiplication map $p: GL_n(\mathbb{R}) \times GL_n(\mathbb{R}) \rightarrow GL_n(\mathbb{R})$ is continuous.

Proof. We note that the map $f + g: X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ can be factored in the form $X \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$.

The map $f \times g$ is continuous since its component maps f, g are continuous; the map a is continuous, and hence the composition $f + g$ is continuous. The argument for $f \cdot g$ is the same, with a replaced by m .

To prove that f/g is continuous, we factor it in the form

$X \xrightarrow{f \wedge g} \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R} \xrightarrow{p_1 \times p_2} \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R} \xrightarrow{I} \mathbb{R}$,

where $\mathbb{R}^x = \{ t \in \mathbb{R} \mid t \neq 0 \}$, p_i (resp. p_2) is the projection to the first (resp. second) factor of $\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^x$, and $I: \mathbb{R}^x \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^x$ is the inversion map $t \mapsto t^{-1}$.

We note that the constant map $\mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}, x \mapsto (x_1, \dots, x_n) \mapsto a$ is obviously continuous, and that the projection map $p_i: \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}, x \mapsto (x_1, \dots, x_n) \mapsto x_i$ is continuous monomial function $x \mapsto x_i$. ■ ■ ■

x^n is continuous. Any polynomial function is a sum of monomial functions and hence continuous. Let $M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{R}) = \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ be the set of $n \times n$ matrices and Let $L : M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{R}) \times M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{R}) \rightarrow M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{R})$, $(A, B) \mapsto AB$ be the map given by matrix multiplication. The map p is continuous if and only if the composition

$$M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{R}) \times M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{R}) \xrightarrow{L} M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{R}) \xrightarrow{p} \mathbb{R}$$

is continuous for all $1 < i, j < n$, where p_{ij} is the projection map that sends a matrix A to its entry $A_{ij} \in \mathbb{R}$. Since the $p_{ij}(p(A, B)) = (A \cdot B)_{ij}$ is a polynomial in the entries of the matrices A and B , this is a continuous map and hence p is continuous. Restricting p to invertible matrices, we obtain the multiplication map

$$L| : GL_n(\mathbb{R}) \times GL_n(\mathbb{R}) \rightarrow GL_n(\mathbb{R})$$

that we want to show is continuous. We will argue that in general if $f : X \rightarrow Y$ is a continuous map with $f(A) \in B$ for subsets $A \subset X$, $B \subset Y$, then the restriction $f|_A : A \rightarrow B$ is continuous.

$$A \subset B$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} i & & j \\ X & & Y \end{array}$$

where i, j are obvious inclusion maps. These inclusion maps are continuous w.r.t. the subspace topology on A, B by Theorem. The continuity of f and i implies the continuity of $f \circ i = j \circ f|_A$ which again by Theorem implies the continuity of $f|_A$.

Quotient topology.

Definition. Let X be a topological space and Let \sim be an equivalence relation on X . We denote by X/\sim be the set of equivalence classes and by

$$p : X \rightarrow X/\sim, x \mapsto [x]$$

be the projection map that sends a point $x \in X$ to its equivalence class $[x]$. The quotient topology on X/\sim is given by the collection of subsets

$$U = \{ U \subset X/\sim \mid p^{-1}(U) \text{ is an open subset of } X \}.$$

Notes

The set X/\sim equipped with the quotient topology is known the quotient space.

The quotient topology is often used to construct a topology on a set Y which is not a subset of some Euclidean space \mathbb{R}^n , or for which it is not clear how to construct a metric.

If there is a surjective map $p: X \rightarrow Y$ from a topological space X , then Y can be identified with quotient space X/\sim , where the equivalence relation is given by $x \sim x'$ if and only if $p(x)=p(x')$. In particular, $Y=X/\sim$ can be equipped with the quotient topology. Here are important examples.

Example. The real projective space of dimension n is the set $\mathbb{R}P^n := \{ \text{1-dimensional subspaces of } \mathbb{R}^{n+1} \}$.

The map $S^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}P^n$ $v \mapsto$ subspace generated by v is surjective, leading to the identification $\mathbb{R}P^n = S^n / (v \sim \pm v)$, and the quotient topology on $\mathbb{R}P^n$.

Similarly, working with complex vector spaces, we obtain a quotient topology on the complex projective space

$$\mathbb{C}P^n := \{ \text{1-dimensional subspaces of } \mathbb{C}^{n+1} \} = S^{2n+1} / (v \sim zv), z \in S^1$$

Generalizing, we can consider the Grassmann manifold

$G_k(\mathbb{R}^{n+fc}) := \{ \text{k-dimensional subspaces of } \mathbb{R}^{n+fc} \}$. There is a surjective map

$$V_k(\mathbb{R}^{n+fc}) = \{ (v_1, \dots, v_k) \mid v_j \in \mathbb{R}^{n+fc}, v_j \text{'s are orthonormal} \} \rightarrow G_k(\mathbb{R}^{n+fc})$$

given by sending $(v_1, \dots, v_k) \in V_k(\mathbb{R}^{n+fc})$ to the k -dimensional subspace of \mathbb{R}^{n+fc} spanned by the v 's. Hence the subspace topology on the Stiefel manifold $V_k(\mathbb{R}^{n+fc}) \rightarrow G_k(\mathbb{R}^{n+fc})$ gives a quotient topology on the Grassmann manifold $G_k(\mathbb{R}^{n+fc}) = V_k(\mathbb{R}^{n+fc}) / \sim$. The same construction works for the complex Grassmann manifold $G_k(\mathbb{C}^{n+fc})$.

As the examples below will show, sometimes a quotient space X/\sim is homeomorphic to a topological space Z constructed in a different way. To establish the homeomorphism between X/\sim and Z , we need to construct continuous maps

$$f: X/\sim \rightarrow Z \quad g: Z \rightarrow X/\sim$$

that are inverse to each other. The next Theorem shows that it is easy to check continuity of the map f , the map out of the quotient space.

Theorem. The projection map $p: X \rightarrow X/\sim$ is continuous and a map $f: X/\sim \rightarrow Z$ to a topological space Z is continuous if and only if the composition $f \circ p: X \rightarrow Z$ is continuous.

As we will observe in the next section, there are many situations where the continuity of the inverse map for a continuous bijection f is automatic. So in the examples below, and for the exercises in this section, we will defer checking the continuity of f^{-1} to that section.

Notation. Let A be a subset of a topological space X . Define an equivalence relation \sim on X by $x \sim y$ if $x=y$ or $x, y \in A$. We use the notation X/A for the quotient space X/\sim .

Example. We claim that the quotient space $[-1, +1]/\{\pm 1\}$ is homeomorphic to

S^1 via the map $f: [-1, +1]/\{\pm 1\} \rightarrow S^1$ given by $[t] \mapsto e^{i\pi t}$. Geometrically speaking, the map f wraps the interval $[-1, +1]$ once around the circle. It is

easy to check that the map f is a bijection.

To observe that f is continuous, consider the composition $[-1, +1] \rightarrow [-1, +1]/\{\pm 1\} \rightarrow S^1 \subset \mathbb{C} = \mathbb{R}^2$, where p is the projection map and i the inclusion map. This composition sends $t \in [-1, +1]$ to $e^{i\pi t} = (\cos \pi t, \sin \pi t) \in \mathbb{R}^2$.

It is a continuous function, since its component functions $\sin \pi t$ and $\cos \pi t$ are continuous functions. The continuity of $i \circ f \circ p$ implies the continuity of $i \circ f$, which implies the continuity of f . As mentioned

above, we'll postpone the proof of the continuity of the inverse map f^{-1} to the next section. homeomorphic to a subspace of \mathbb{R}^3 .

1.5 PROPERTIES OF TOPOLOGICAL SPACES

In the previous subsection we described a number of examples of topological spaces X, Y that we claimed to be homeomorphic. We typically constructed a bijection $f: X \rightarrow Y$ and argued that f is continuous. However, we did not finish the proof that f is a homeomorphism, since we deferred the argument that the inverse map $f^{-1}: Y \rightarrow X$ is continuous. We note that not every continuous bijection is a homeomorphism. For example if X is a set, X (resp. X_{ind}) is the topological space given by equipping the set X with the discrete (resp. indiscrete) topology, then the identity map is a continuous bijection from X to X_{ind} . However its inverse, the identity map $X_{\text{ind}} \rightarrow X$ is not continuous if X contains at least two points.

Fortunately, there are situations where the continuity of the inverse map is automatic as the following proposition shows.

Proposition. Let $f: X \rightarrow Y$ be a continuous bijection. Then f is a homeomorphism provided X is compact and Y is Hausdorff.

The goal of this section is to define these notions, prove the proposition above, and to give a tools to recognize that a topological space is compact and /or Hausdorff.

Hausdorff spaces

Definition. Let X be a topological space, $x \in X, i = 1, 2, \dots$ a sequence in X and $x \in X$. Then x is the limit of the x_i 's if for any open subset $U \subset X$ containing x there is some N such that $x_j \in U$ for all $j > N$.

Caveat: If X is a topological space with the indiscrete topology, every point is the limit of every sequence. The limit is unique if the topological space has the following property:

Definition. A topological space X is Hausdorff if for every $x, y \in X$, $x \neq y$, there are disjoint open subsets $U, V \subset X$ with $x \in U$, $y \in V$.

Note: if X is a metric space, then the metric topology on X is Hausdorff (since for $x \neq y$ and $\epsilon = d(x, y)/2$, the balls $B_\epsilon(x)$, $B_\epsilon(y)$ are disjoint open subsets). In particular, any subset of \mathbb{R}^n , equipped with the subspace topology, is Hausdorff. The notion of Cauchy sequences can be defined in metric spaces, but not in general for topological spaces (even when they are Hausdorff).

Theorem. Let X be a topological space and A a closed subspace of X . If $x_n \in A$ is a sequence with limit x , then $x \in A$.

Proof. Let $x \notin A$. Then x is a point in the open subset $X \setminus A$ and hence by the definition of limit, all but finitely many elements x_n must belong to $X \setminus A$, contradicting our assumptions.

Compact spaces

Definition. An open cover of a topological space X is a collection of open subsets of X whose union is X . If for every open cover of X there is a finite sub collection which also covers X , then X is known compact. Some books (like Munkres' Topology) refer to open covers as open coverings, while newer books (and wikipedia) observe to prefer to above terminology, probably for the same reasons as me: to avoid confusions with covering spaces, a notion we'll introduce soon.

Theorem. If $f: X \rightarrow Y$ is a continuous map and X is compact, then the image $f(X)$ is compact.

In particular, if X is compact, then any quotient space X/\sim is compact, since the projection map $X \rightarrow X/\sim$ is continuous with image X/\sim .

Notes

Proof. To show that $f(X)$ is compact let that $\{U_a\}, a \in A$ is an open cover of the subspace $f(X)$. Then each U_a is of the form $U_a = V_a \cap f(X)$ for some open subset $V_a \in Y$. Then $\{f^{-1}(V_a)\}, a \in A$ is an open cover of X . Since X is compact, there is a finite subset A' of A such that $\{f^{-1}(V_a)\}, a \in A'$ is a cover of X . This implies that $\{U_a\}, a \in A'$ is a finite cover of $f(X)$, and hence $f(X)$ is compact.

Theorem. 1. If K is a closed subspace of a compact space X , then K is compact.

If K is compact subspace of a Hausdorff space X , then K is closed.

Proof. Let that $\{U_a\}, a \in A$ is an open covering of K . Since the U_a 's are open w.r.t. the subspace topology of K , there are open subsets V_a of X such that $U_a = V_a \cap K$. Then the V_a 's together with the open subset $X \setminus K$ form an open covering of X . The compactness of X implies that there is a finite subset $A' \subset A$ such that the subsets V_a for $a \in A'$, together with $X \setminus K$ still cover X . It follows that $\{U_a\}, a \in A'$ is a finite cover of K , showing that K is compact.

Corollary. If $f: X \rightarrow Y$ is a continuous bijection with X compact and Y Hausdorff, then f is a homeomorphism.

Proof. We need to show that the map $g: Y \rightarrow X$ inverse to f is continuous, i.e., that $g^{-1}(U) = f^{-1}(U)$ is an open subset of X for any open subset U of Y . Equivalently (by passing to complements), it suffices to show that $g^{-1}(C) = f^{-1}(C)$ is a closed subset of X for any closed subset C of Y .

Now the assumption that X is compact implies that the closed subset $C \subset X$ is compact that Y is Hausdorff then implies by part of Theorem that $f(C)$ is closed.

Theorem. Let K be a compact subset of \mathbb{R}^n . Then K is bounded, meaning that there is some $r > 0$ such that K is contained in the open ball $B_r(0) := \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid d(x, 0) < r\}$.

Proof. The collection $B_r(0)$ if K , $r \in (0, r_0)$, is an open cover of K . By compactness, K is covered by a finite number of these balls; if R is the maximum of the radii of these finitely many balls, this implies $K \subset B_R(0)$ as desired.

Corollary. If $f: X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is a continuous function on a compact space X , then f has a maximum and a minimum.

Proof. $K=f(X)$ is a compact subset of \mathbb{R} . Hence K is bounded, and thus K has an infimum $a := \inf K \in \mathbb{R}$ and a supremum $b := \sup K \in \mathbb{R}$. The infimum (resp. supremum) of K is the limit of a sequence of elements in K ; since K is closed, the limit points a and b belong to K . In other words, there are elements $x_{\min}, x_{\max} \in X$ with $f(x_{\min})=a < f(x)$ for all $x \in X$ and $f(x_{\max})=b > f(x)$ for all $x \in X$. spaces we are interested in, are in fact compact. Note that this is quite difficult just working from the definition of compactness: you need to ensure that every open cover has a finite subcover. That sounds like a lot of work...

Fortunately, there is a very simple classical characterization of compact subspaces of Euclidean spaces:

Theorem. (Heine-Borel Theorem) A subspace $X \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ is compact if and only if X is closed and bounded.

We note that we've already proved that if $K \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ is compact, then K is a closed subset of \mathbb{R}^n and K is bounded

There two important ingredients to the proof of the converse, namely the following two results:

Theorem. A closed interval $[a, b]$ is compact.

Theorem. If X_1, \dots, X_n are compact topological spaces, then their product $X_1 \times \dots \times X_n$ is compact.

The statement is true more generally for a product of infinitely many compact, the correct definition of the product topology for infinite products this result is known Tychonoff's Theorem,

Notes

Proof of the Heine-Borel Theorem. Let $K \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ be closed and bounded, say $K \subset B_r(0)$. We note that $B_r(0)$ is contained in the n -fold product

$$P := [-r, r] \times \cdots \times [-r, r] \subset \mathbb{R}^n$$

which is compact. So K is a closed subset of P and hence compact

Connected spaces

Definition. A topological space X is connected if it can't be written as decomposed in the form $X=U \cup V$, where U, V are two non-empty disjoint open subsets of X .

For example, if a, b, c, d are real numbers with $a < b < c < d$, consider the subspace $X=(a, b) \cup (c, d) \subset \mathbb{R}$. The topological space X is not connected, since $U=(a, b), V=(c, d)$ are open disjoint subsets of X whose union is X . This remains true if we replace the open intervals by closed intervals. The space $X'=[a, b] \cup [c, d]$ is not connected, since it is the disjoint union of the subsets $U'=[a, b], V'=[c, d]$. We want to emphasize that while U' and V' are not open as subsets of \mathbb{R} , they are open subsets of X' , since they can be written as

$$U'=(a, c) \cap X' \quad V'=(b, d) \cap X',$$

showing that they are open subsets for the subspace topology of $X' \subset \mathbb{R}$.

Theorem. Any interval I in \mathbb{R} (open, closed, half-open, bounded or not) is connected.

Proof. Using proof by contradiction, Let us let that I has a decomposition $I=U \cup V$ as the union of two non-empty disjoint open subsets. Pick points $u \in U$ and $v \in V$, and Let us let $u < v$ without loss of generality. Then

$[u, v]=U' \cup V'$ with $U' := U \cap [u, v], V' := V \cap [u, v]$ is a decomposition of $[u, v]$ as the disjoint union of non-empty disjoint open subsets U', V' of $[u, v]$. We claim that the supremum $c := \sup U'$ belongs to both, U' and

V' , thus leading

to the desired contradiction. Here is the argument.

Assuming that c doesn't belong to U' , for any $\epsilon > 0$, there must be some element of U' belonging to the interval $(c - \epsilon, c)$, allowing us to construct a sequence of elements $u \in U'$ converging to c . This implies $c \in U'$ since U' is a closed subspace of $[u, v]$ (its complement V' is open).

By construction, every $x \in [u, v]$ with $x > c = \sup U'$ belongs to V' . So we can construct a sequence $v \in V'$ converging to c . Since V' is a closed subset of $[u, v]$, we conclude $c \in V'$.

•

Theorem. (Intermediate Value Theorem) Let X be a connected topological space and $f: X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ a continuous map. If elements $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$ belong to the image of f , then also any real number c between a and b belongs to the image of f .

Proof. Let that c is not in the image of f . Then $X = f^{-1}((-\infty, c)) \cup f^{-1}(c, \infty)$ is a decomposition of X as a union of non-empty disjoint open subsets.

There is another notion, closely related to the notion of connected topological space which might be easier to think of geometrically.

Definition. A topological space X is path connected if for any points $x, y \in X$ there is a path connecting them. In other words, there is a continuous map $\gamma: [a, b] \rightarrow X$ from some interval to X with $\gamma(a) = x$, $\gamma(b) = y$.

Theorem. Any path connected topological space is connected.

Proof. Using proof by contradiction, Let us let that the topological space X is path connected, but not connected. So there is a decomposition $X = U \cup V$ of X as the union of non-empty open subsets $U, V \subset X$. The assumption that X is path connected allows us to find a path $\gamma: [a, b] \rightarrow X$ with $\gamma(a) \in U$ and $\gamma(b) \in V$. Then we obtain the decomposition $[a, b] = f^{-1}(U) \cup f^{-1}(V)$ of the interval $[a, b]$ as the disjoint union of open subsets.

Notes

These are non-empty since $a \in f^{-1}(U)$ and $b \in f^{-1}(V)$. This implies that $[a, b]$ is not connected, the desired contradiction.

For typical topological spaces we will consider, the properties "connected" and "path connected" are equivalent. But here is an example known as the topologist's sine curve which is connected, but not path connected. It is the following subspace of \mathbb{R}^2 :

$$X = \{(x, \sin^{-1} x) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid 0 < x < 1\} \cup \{(0, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid -1 < y < 1\}$$

Check your Progress-1

Discuss Topology,

Discuss Topological spaces

1.6 ONE VARIABLE CALCULUS

In this brief discussion of one variable calculus, we introduce the Riemann integral, and relate it to the derivative. We will define the Riemann integral of a bounded function over an interval $I=[a, b]$ on the real line. For now, we let f is real valued. To start, we partition I into smaller intervals. A partition P of I is a finite collection of subintervals $\{ J_k : 0 < k < N \}$,

disjoint except for their endpoints, whose union is I . We can order the J_k so that $J_k = [x_k, x_{k+1}]$, where

$$x_0 < x_1 < \dots < x_N < x_{N+1}, \quad x_0 = a, \quad x_{N+1} = b.$$

We call the points x_k the endpoints of P . We set

$$l(J_k) = x_{k+1} - x_k, \quad \text{maxsize}(P) = \max_k l(J_k)$$

We then set

$$I_P(f) = \sum_{k=1}^N f(x_k) l(J_k), \quad k \in J_k$$

$$L_P(f) = \sum_{k=1}^N f(x_k) l(J_k), \quad J_k \in P$$

the definition of \sup and \inf . We call $I_P(f)$ and $L_P(f)$ respectively the upper sum and lower sum of f , associated to the partition P . Note that $L_P(f) < I_P(f)$. These quantities should approximate the Riemann integral of f , if the partition P is sufficiently "fine."

To be more precise, if P and Q are two partitions of I , we say P refines

Q , and write $P \succ Q$, if P is formed by partitioning each interval in Q .

Equivalently, $P \succ Q$ if and only if all the endpoints of Q are also endpoints

of P . It is easy to observe that any two partitions have a common refinement;

just take the union of their endpoints, to form a new partition. Note also that refining a partition lowers the upper sum of f and raises its lower sum:

$$P \succ Q \implies I_P(f) < I_Q(f), \quad \text{and} \quad L_P(f) > L_Q(f).$$

Consequently, if P_j are any two partitions and Q is a common refinement,

we have

$$I_{P_1}(f) < I_Q(f) < I_{P_2}(f).$$

Now, whenever $f : I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is bounded, the following quantities are well

defined:

$$(1.6) \quad I(f) = \int_a^b f(x) dx, \quad I(f) = \sup_P L_P(f) = \inf_P I_P(f)$$

Notes

where $\mathcal{n}(I)$ is the set of all partitions of I . We call $I(f)$ the lower integral of f and $I(f)$ its upper integral. Clearly $I(f) < I(f)$. We then say that f is Riemann integrable provided $I(f) = I(f)$, and in such a case, we set

$$\int f(x) dx = \int f(x) dx = I(f) = I(f).$$

We will denote the set of Riemann integrable functions on I by $R(I)$.

We derive some basic properties of the Riemann integral.

Proposition If $f, g \in R(I)$, then $f + g \in R(I)$, and

$$\int (f + g) dx = \int f dx + \int g dx. \quad \text{ii}$$

Proof. If J_k is any subinterval of I , then

$$\sup_{J_k} (f + g) < \sup_{J_k} f + \sup_{J_k} g, \text{ and } \inf_{J_k} (f + g) > \inf_{J_k} f + \inf_{J_k} g,$$

so, for any partition P , we have $I_p(f + g) < I_p(f) + I_p(g)$. Also, using common refinements, we can simultaneously approximate $I(f)$ and $I(g)$ by $I_p(f)$ and $I_p(g)$, and ditto for $I(f + g)$. Thus the characterization implies $I(f + g) < I(f) + I(g)$. A parallel argument implies $I(f + g) > I(f) + I(g)$, and the proposition follows.

Next, there is a fair supply of Riemann integrable functions.

Proposition If f is continuous on I , then f is Riemann integrable.

Proof. Any continuous function on a compact interval is bounded and uniformly continuous.

Let $\omega(\delta)$ be a modulus of continuity for f , so

$$|x - y| < \delta \Rightarrow |f(x) - f(y)| < \omega(\delta), \quad \omega(\delta) \rightarrow 0 \text{ as } \delta \rightarrow 0. \text{ Then}$$

$$\max_{P \in \mathcal{P}(\delta)} (I_p(f) - L_p(f)) < \omega(\delta) \cdot l(I),$$

which yields the proposition.

We denote the set of continuous functions on I by $C(I)$.

$C(I) \subset R(I)$.

The criterion on a partition guaranteeing that $I_p(f)$ and $I_{-p}(f)$ are close to $\int_I f \, dx$ when f is continuous.

We produce an extension, giving a condition under which $I_p(f)$ and $I(f)$ are close, and $I_p(f)$ and $I_{-p}(f)$ are close, given f bounded on I . Given a partition P_0 of I , set $\text{minsize}(P_0) = \min\{l(J_k) : J_k \in P_0\}$.

Theorem Let P and Q be two partitions of I . Let

$$\text{maxsize}(P) < \frac{1}{k} \text{minsize}(Q).$$

Let $|f| < M$ on I . Then

$$|I_P(f) - I_Q(f)| \leq M \sum_{I \in P_1} l(I).$$

$$|I_P(f) - I_Q(f)| \leq M \sum_{I \in P_1} l(I).$$

Proof. Let P_1 denote the minimal common refinement of P and Q . Consider on the one hand those intervals in P that are contained in intervals in Q and on the other hand those intervals in P that are not contained in intervals in Q . Each interval of the first type is also an interval in P_1 . Each interval of the second type gets partitioned, to yield two intervals in P_1 . Denote by P_i the collection of such divided intervals. The lengths of the intervals in P_1 sum to $< l(I)/k$. It follows that

$$|I_P(f) - I_{P_1}(f)| \leq M \sum_{I \in P_1} l(I) < 2Ml(I)/k,$$

and similarly $|I_P(f) - I_{P_1}(f)| < 2Ml(I)/k$. Therefore

$$|I_P(f) - I_{P_1}(f)| \leq M \sum_{I \in P_1} l(I), \quad |I_P(f) - I_{P_1}(f)| \leq M \sum_{I \in P_1} l(I).$$

Since also $|I_{P_1}(f) - I_Q(f)| < M \sum_{I \in P_1} l(I)$ and $|I_{P_1}(f) - I_Q(f)| < M \sum_{I \in P_1} l(I)$

The following consequence is sometimes known Darboux's Theorem.

Theorem Let P_v be a sequence of partitions of I into v intervals J_{vk} , $1 < k < v$, such that $\text{maxsize}(P_v) \rightarrow 0$.

If $f : I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is bounded, then $(\int_I f \, dx) = \lim_{v \rightarrow \infty} I_{P_v}(f)$ and

$L_P(f) = \int_I f \, dx$. Consequently,

$$f \in R(I) \wedge \int_I f \, dx = \lim_{v \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^v f(\xi_k) l(J_{vk}), \text{ is } \int_I f \, dx = \lim_{v \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^v f(\xi_k) l(J_{vk}),$$

Notes

for arbitrary $f_{v_k} \in J_{v_k}$, in which case the limit is $f \, dx$.

Proof. As before, let $\|f\| < M$. Pick $\epsilon = 1/k > 0$. Let Q be a partition such that

$$I(f) < IQ(f) < I(f) + \epsilon,$$

$$I(f) > LQ(f) > I(f) - \epsilon.$$

Now pick N such that

$$v > N \Rightarrow \maxsize P_v < \epsilon \minsize Q.$$

yields, for $v > N$,

$$LP_v(f) < LQ(f) + 2M\epsilon,$$

$$LP_v(f) > LQ(f) - 2M\epsilon.$$

Hence, for $v > N$,

$$L(f) < LP_v(f) < L(f) + [2M(L) + 1]\epsilon,$$

$$L(f) > LP_v(f) > L(f) - [2M(L) + 1]\epsilon. \quad f'(a) = 0.$$

pr

Then there exists a $\delta > 0$

1.7 THE DIFFERENTIAL CALCULUS OF FUNCTIONS OF SEVERAL VARIABLES

The Linear Structure on \mathbb{R}^n

\mathbb{R}^n as a Vector Space

The concept of a vector space is already familiar to you from your study of algebra.

If we introduce the operation of addition of elements $X = (x_1, \dots, x_n)$ and $Y = (y_1, \dots, y_n)$ by the formula

$$X + Y = (x_1 + y_1, \dots, x_n + y_n),$$

and multiplication of an element $x=(x_1, \dots, x_m)$ by a number $A \in \mathbb{R}$ via the relation

$$Ax=(Ax_1, \dots, Ax_m),$$

then \mathbb{R}^m becomes a vector space over the field of real numbers. Its points can now be known vectors.

The vectors

$$d_i=(0, \dots, 0, 1, 0, \dots, 0) \quad (i=1, \dots, m)$$

(where the 1 stands only in the i th place) form a maximal linearly independent set of vectors in this space, as a result of which it turns out to be an m -dimensional vector space.

Any vector $x \in \mathbb{R}^m$ can be expanded with respect to the basis, that is, represented in the form

$$x = \sum_{i=1}^m x_i d_i$$

When vectors are indexed, we shall write the index as a subscript, while denoting its coordinates, as we have been doing, by superscripts. This is convenient for many reasons and can make the convention of writing expressions like $\sum_{i=1}^m x_i d_i$ briefly in the form $\sum_i x_i d_i$ taking the simultaneous presence of subscript and superscript with the same letter to indicate summation with respect to that letter over its range of variation.

Check your Progress-2

Discuss One variable calculus

Discuss The differential calculus of functions of several variables

1.8 LET US SUM UP

In this unit we have discussed the definition and example of Topology, Topological spaces, Constructions with topological spaces, Properties of topological spaces, One variable calculus, The differential calculus of functions of several variables.

1.9 KEYWORDS

Topology: In mathematics, topology is concerned with the properties of a geometric object that are preserved under continuous deformations, such as stretching, twisting, crumpling and bending, but not tearing or gluing.

Topological spaces: A topological space (X, T) is a set X together with a topology T on X .

1.10 QUESTIONS FOR REVIEW

Explain Topology, Topological spaces

Explain One variable calculus

The differential calculus of functions of several variables

1.11 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

Topology, Topological spaces (answer for Check your Progress-1 Q)

One variable calculus

The differential calculus of functions of several variables

(answer for Check your Progress-2

Q)

1.12 REFERENCES

- Analysis of Several Variables
- Application of Several Variables
- Function of Several Variables
- Several Variables
- Function of Variables
- System of Equation
- Function of Real Variables
- Real Several Variables
- Elementary Variables
- Calculus of Several Variables
- Advance Calculus of Several Variables

UNIT - 2: FUNCTIONS OF SEVERAL VARIABLES

STRUCTURE

2.0 Objectives

2.1 Introduction

2.2 Functions Of Several Variables

2.3 The Space Of Linear Transformations From \mathbb{R}^m To \mathbb{R}^n

2.4 The Space \mathbb{R}^m And Its Subsets Open And Closed Sets In \mathbb{R}^m

2.5 Limits And Continuity Of Functions Of Several Variables

2.6 Continuity Of A Function Of Several Variables And

Properties Of Continuous Functions

2.7 Let Us Sum Up

2.8 Keywords

2.9 Questions For Review

2.10 Answers To Check Your Progress

2.11 References

2.0 OBJECTIVES

After studying this unit, you should be able to:

Learn, Understand about Functions Of Several Variables

Learn, Understand about Space Of Linear Transformations From \mathbb{R}^m To \mathbb{R}^n

Learn, Understand about The Space \mathbb{R}^m And Its Subsets Open And Closed Sets In \mathbb{R}^m

Learn, Understand about Limits And Continuity Of Functions Of Several Variables

Learn, Understand about Continuity Of A Function Of Several Variables And Properties Of Continuous Functions

2.1 INTRODUCTION

In mathematics advanced calculus whose aim is to provide a firm logical foundation of analysis of calculus and a course in linear algebra treats analysis in one variable & analysis in several variables

Functions Of Several Variables, The Space Of Linear Transformations From \mathbb{R}^m To \mathbb{R}^n , The Space \mathbb{R}^m And Its Subsets, Open And Closed Sets In \mathbb{R}^m , Limits And Continuity Of Functions Of Several Variables, Continuity Of A Function Of Several Variables, And Properties Of Continuous Functions

2.2 FUNCTIONS OF SEVERAL VARIABLES

Up to now we have considered almost exclusively numerical-valued functions $x \mapsto f(x)$ in which the number $f(x)$ was determined by giving a single number x from the domain of definition of the function.

However, many quantities of interest depend on not just one, but many factors, and if the quantity itself and each of the factors that determine it can be characterized by some number, then this dependence reduces to the fact that a value $y = f(x_1, \dots, x_n)$ of the quantity in question is made to correspond to an ordered set (x_1, \dots, x_n) of numbers, each of which describes the state of the corresponding factor. The quantity gets this value when the factors determining this quantity are in these states.

For example, the area of a rectangle is the product of the lengths of its sides. The volume of a given quantity of gas is computed by the formula

$$V = R \frac{mT}{p}$$

Where R is a constant, m is the mass, T is the absolute temperature, and p is the pressure of the gas. Thus the value of V depends on a variable ordered triple of numbers (m, T, p) , or, as we say, V is a function of the three variables m , T , and p .

Notes

Our goal is to learn how to study functions of several variables just as we learned how to study functions of one variable.

As in the case of functions of one variable, the study of functions of several numerical variables begins by describing their domains of definition.

The Space M^m and the Most Important Classes of its Subsets

The Set M^m and the Distance in it

We make the convention that M^m denotes the set of ordered m -tuples (x_1, \dots, x_m) of real numbers $x_i \in \mathbb{R}$, $(i=1, \dots, m)$.

Each such m -tuple will be denoted by a single letter $x=(x_1, \dots, x_m)$ and, in accordance with convenient geometric terminology, will be known a point of M^m . The number x_i in the set (x_1, \dots, x_m) will be known the i th coordinate of the point $x=(x_1, \dots, x_m)$.

The geometric analogies can be extended by introducing a distance on M^m between the points $x=(x_1, \dots, x_m)$ and $x_2=(x_2, \dots, x_m)$ according to the formula

$$d(x, x_2) = \sqrt{(x_1 - x_{21})^2 + \dots + (x_m - x_{2m})^2}.$$

$$d(x, x) = 0.$$

The function

$$d : M^m \times M^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$$

defined by the formula obviously has the following properties:

$$d(x_1, x_2) \geq 0;$$

$$(d(x_1, x_2) = 0) \Leftrightarrow (x_1 = x_2);$$

$$d(x_1, x_2) = d(x_2, x_1);$$

$$d(x_1, x_3) \leq d(x_1, x_2) + d(x_2, x_3).$$

This last inequality (known, again because of geometric analogies, the triangle inequality) is a special case of Minkowski's inequality.

A function defined on pairs of points $\{x, x_2\}$ of a set X and possessing the properties is known as a metric or distance on X .

A set X together with a fixed metric on it is known as a metric space.

Thus we have turned M_m into a metric space by endowing it with the metric given by relation.

The reader can get information on arbitrary metric spaces. Here we do not wish to become distracted from the particular metric space M_m that we need at the moment.

Since the space M_m with metric will be our only metric space, forming our object of study, we have no need for the general definition of a metric space at the moment. It is given only to explain the term "space" used in relation to M_m and the term "metric" in relation to the function.

It follows that for $i \in \{1, \dots, m\}$

$$\|x - x_2\| < d(x, x_2) < \frac{1}{m} \max \|x - x_2\|,$$

$$l < 2 < m$$

that is, the distance between the points $x_1, x_2 \in M_m$ is small if and only if the corresponding coordinates of these points are close together.

It is clear that for $m=1$, the set M_1 is the same as the set of real numbers, between whose points the distance is measured in the standard way by the absolute value of the difference of the numbers.

2.3 THE SPACE OF LINEAR TRANSFORMATIONS FROM R^m TO R^n

Linear transformations mapping R^m to R^n . We can add such linear transformations in the usual way: $(L_1 + L_2)(x) = L_1(x) + L_2(x)$. Similarly we can multiply such a linear transformation by a scalar. In this way, the set

Notes

$L(\mathbb{R}^n, \mathbb{R}^m) = \{ \text{linear transformations from } \mathbb{R}^n \text{ to } \mathbb{R}^m \}$ becomes a vector space. If we choose bases for \mathbb{R}^n and \mathbb{R}^m , say the standard bases, then each element of $L(\mathbb{R}^n, \mathbb{R}^m)$ has an $m \times n$ matrix with respect to these bases.

Since there are mn entries in such a matrix, and they all can be chosen independently of each other, $L(\mathbb{R}^n, \mathbb{R}^m)$ has dimension mn . A basis is the set of $m \times n$ matrices which are all zero except for a 1 in one entry.

Second derivative

Recall that if $f: \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$ is differentiable at a point $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$, then $Df(x)$ is a linear transformation from \mathbb{R}^n to \mathbb{R}^m . Hence, for each x , $Df(x) \in L(\mathbb{R}^n, \mathbb{R}^m)$. From this we observe that Df is a function from \mathbb{R}^n to $L(\mathbb{R}^n, \mathbb{R}^m)$.

We can then discuss $D(Df)$, or D^2f , the second derivative of f . For each $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$, $D^2f(x)$

is a linear transformation from \mathbb{R}^n to $L(\mathbb{R}^n, \mathbb{R}^m)$. Hence, for any $v \in \mathbb{R}^n$, $D^2f(x)(v) \in L(\mathbb{R}^n, \mathbb{R}^m)$. Therefore, for any $w \in \mathbb{R}^n$, $D^2f(x)(v)(w) \in \mathbb{R}^m$.

Recall that $\mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n = \{(v, w) \mid v \text{ and } w \text{ are in } \mathbb{R}^n\}$. We can therefore consider $D^2f(x)$ as a linear transformation from $\mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n$ to \mathbb{R}^m . So instead of writing $D^2f(x)(v)(w)$,

we write $D^2f(x)(v, w)$.

This linear transformation from $\mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n$ to \mathbb{R}^m is known "bilinear", because it is linear as a function of v for each fixed w , and also as a function of w for each fixed v . In other words,

$$D^2f(x)(av^1 + dv^2, yw^1 + hw^2) = aD^2f(x)(v^1, w^1) + aD^2f(x)(v^2, w^1) + ahD^2f(x)(v^1, w^2) + hD^2f(x)(v^2, w^2)$$

Now we will only consider the case $m = 1$. Thus,

We wish to consider the nature of a general bilinear function L from $\mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n$ to \mathbb{R} .

$$f: \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$$

For each x , $Df(x): \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$

For each x , $D^2f(x)$ Equivalently, $D^2f(x)$

$$\mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow L(\mathbb{R}^n, \mathbb{R})$$

$$\mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$$

Let e_1, \dots, e_n be the standard basis vectors of \mathbb{R}^n . Then for each i and j , $L(e_i, e_j) \in \mathbb{R}$. Let $L(e_j, e_j) = a_{jj}$.

It will be simplest now to consider the case $n=2$. Suppose that $v = c_1 e_1 + c_2 e_2$, and $w = d_1 e_1 + d_2 e_2$. The bilinearity implies that

$$\begin{aligned} L(v, w) &= L(c_1 e_1 + c_2 e_2, d_1 e_1 + d_2 e_2) \\ &= c_1 d_1 a_{11} + c_1 d_2 a_{12} + c_2 d_1 a_{21} + \\ &\quad c_2 d_2 a_{22}. \end{aligned}$$

It turns out that this equals an $a_{12} \setminus (d_1$

$$\begin{aligned} & (c_1, c_2) \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} d_1 \\ d_2 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

(Check by multiplying this out.) In this way, each L is associated with an $n \times n$

matrix A . In the case where $L = D^2 f(x)$, it is shown in the text that

$$f'' = A$$

$$A = \left(\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x_i \partial x_j} \right)$$

If you recall that for most functions, the order in which you take partial derivatives doesn't matter, you observe that under some assumptions on f , A is a symmetric matrix.

All of the second partial derivatives of f are continuous.

Example: Let $f(x, y) = x^2 y + x y^3$. We will find the standard matrix for $D^2 f(1, 1)$, and check that the limit formula for derivative works. For this function we have

$$Df(x, y) = (2xy + y^3, x^2 + 3xy^2).$$

By this we mean that

$$\begin{aligned} & (2xy + y^3)u \\ & (x^2 + 3xy^2)v \end{aligned}$$

Notes

Also,

$$2x + 3y^2$$

$$2x + 3y^2 - 6xy$$

(Notice that $D^2f(x, y): \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow L(\mathbb{R}^n, \mathbb{R})$. Therefore, must be a map from \mathbb{R}^n to \mathbb{R} . We saw such a map before: $Df(x)$ maps \mathbb{R}^n to \mathbb{R} . Any element of $L(\mathbb{R}^n, \mathbb{R})$ can be written in the form

$$x \mapsto bx$$

where b is a $1 \times n$ matrix; that is, a row vector. And any linear map L from \mathbb{R}^n to \mathbb{R} can be written as $y \mapsto y^T A$ for some $n \times n$ matrix A . It is shown in the text that if $L = D^2f(x)$ partial derivatives of f , known the "Hessian".

This leads us to the equation We now check this last formula using the definition of derivative. However, it is a bit complicated to describe just what is meant by the norm of a linear operator. It turns out to be equivalent to discuss the corresponding matrices. Once again the sup norm will be convenient. We wish to check that (Notice that in the numerator we are dealing with row vectors.) We obtain

$$\|(2x + y^3, x^2 + 3xy^2) - (3, 4) - (2(x-1) + 5(y-1), 5(x-1) + 6(y-1))\|$$

It is sufficient to show that the ratio of the absolute value of each component of the vector in this expression to the norm in the denominator tends to zero as $(x, y) \rightarrow (1, 1)$!

$(1, 1)^*$

The first component is $y^3 + 2xy - 2x - 5y + 4$. A little algebra is necessary: Since

$$2x = 2(x - 1) + 2 \text{ and } 5y = 5(y - 1) + 5, \text{ we have}$$

$$y^3 + (2(x - 1) + 2)y - 2x - 5(y - 1) - 5 + 4 = y^3 - 3y + 2 + (x - 1)(2y - 2)$$

Further, it turns out that $y^3 - 3y + 2 = (y - 1)^2(y + 2)$. Hence if $(x, y) = (1, 1)$

then the ratio of the absolute value of the first component of the numerator to the denominator is

$$|(y-1)^2(y+2) + 2(x-1)(s-1)^1| \text{ if } |x-1| < |y-1|$$

$$\max\{|x-1|, |y-1|\} \text{ if } |x-1| > |y-1|$$

Both alternatives on the right tend to zero as $(x, y) \rightarrow (1, 1)$. The second component can be handled similarly. It would be a nice algebra exercise to do this.

Third derivative

Notice the pattern: $f : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, and for each $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ (where f is differentiable),

$Df(x) : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$. In other words, $Df(x) \in L(\mathbb{R}^n, \mathbb{R})$. The linear transformation

$Df(x)$ has the standard matrix (1 X n) given by the gradient, which is in \mathbb{R}^n . Thus, $Df : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$. Df is not usually a linear transformation.

As we explained, $D^2f(x)$ is a linear transformation from $\mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n$ to \mathbb{R} , and this linear transformation has the standard $n \times n$ matrix given above.

Therefore, $D^2f : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow L(\mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n, \mathbb{R})$. Hence, we expect that for each x ,

$D^3f(x) : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow L(\mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n, \mathbb{R})$. This will involve the third derivatives $\frac{\partial^3 f}{\partial x_i \partial x_j \partial x_k}$.

We will consider this further below. First, we have a review of Taylor series in one variable.

Taylor series for $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$

First recall the general formula for a Taylor series in one variable.

Suppose that

$f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, and all derivatives of f exist at every $x \in \mathbb{R}$. If $x_0 \in \mathbb{R}$, then the

Taylor

series for f at x_0 is

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{f^{(n)}(x_0)}{n!} (x - x_0)^n.$$

Here $f^{(n)}$ is the n -th derivative of f . We have the usual conventions that $0! = 1$ and $f^{(0)} = f$.

Notes

This series can converge for all x , or only for x in some interval containing x_0 .

(It obviously converges if $x = x_0$.) And if it converges for some $x = x_0$, it might not converge to $f(x)$. Examples of these possibilities will be given in class.

Definition If the series converges to $f(x)$ in some neighborhood of x_0 , then f is known "analytic" at x_0 .

Perhaps of even more importance is using a finite sum of the terms in the Taylor series to approximate f on some interval containing x_0 . This can sometimes be done even if f is not analytic at x_0 , perhaps because not all of the derivatives of f at x_0 are defined. The theorem which allows us to give such approximations is known Taylor's theorem. To state Taylor's theorem we first need a definition.

Definition Suppose that $f : I \subset \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, where I is an open interval containing a point x_0 . Suppose that r is a nonnegative integer. We say that f is of class C^r on I if the first r derivatives, $f, f', f'', \dots, f^{(r)}$ exist and are continuous on I .

Theorem Suppose that $f : I \subset \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ where I is an open interval containing a point x_0 , and f is of class C^r on I . Suppose that x and y are in I . Then there is a c between x and y such that

$$f(y) - f(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{r-1} \frac{f^{(n)}(x)(y-x)^n}{n!} + \frac{f^{(r)}(c)(y-x)^r}{r!}$$

If $r = 1$, then this is the mean value theorem.

As an example, Let $f(x) = |x|^{5/2}$, and consider $f(2) - f(-1)$. Notice that $f'(0) = f''(0) = 0$, but $f'''(0)$ doesn't exist. Also, $f(x) = (-x)^{5/2}$ if $x < 0$. We wish to find $c \in (-1, 2)$ such that

$$f(2) - f(-1) = f'(-1)(2 - (-1)) + \frac{1}{2} f''(c)(2 - (-1))^2$$

$$2^{5/2} - 1 = 3f'(-1) + \frac{9}{2} f''(c)$$

If $c > 0$, then $f''(c) = |c|^{1/2}$, while if $d = -c$, then $f''(d) = (|-|)(|-|)(|-d|)^{1/2} = f''(c)$, so f'' is an even function. Therefore we can let $c > 0$, and we want

$$\frac{2^{5/2} - 1}{9} = \frac{1}{2} c^{1/2}$$

or

$$c^{1/2} = \frac{2^{5/2} - 1}{9}$$

$$c = \left(\frac{2^{5/2} - 1}{9}\right)^2$$

Since we let that $c > 0$, we have to check that $c < 2$. That is easily done.

$$c < \left(\frac{2^{5/2} - 1}{9}\right)^2 < 2$$

Taylor's theorem of order 2 and quadratic forms.

As pointed out earlier, the mean value theorem is a special case of Taylor's Theorem.

if f is differentiable at every x , then for any x_0 and x there is a c between x_0 and x such that

$$f(x) = f(x_0) + Df(c)(x - x_0)$$

Recall that $Df(c)$ is a row vector, (the gradient).

Extending by one more term

$$f(x) = f(x_0) + Df(x_0)(x - x_0) + \frac{1}{2} D^2f(c)(x - x_0, x - x_0)$$

We need to explain the last term. From the theory above, we observe that if we write

$x - x_0$ as a column vector, then the last term is of the form

Notes

$$(x - x_0)^T A (x - x_0)$$

and A is the $n \times n$ matrix. Writing this out, we have the expression

$$D^2f(c)(x - x_0, x - x_0) = ((x - x_0)_1, (x - x_0)_2, \dots, (x - x_0)_n) A$$

Let's look again at $n=2$. Let

$$x - x_0 = \begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix}$$

for scalars u and v . Then the expression in becomes

$$a_{11}u^2 + 2a_{12}uv + a_{22}v^2.$$

But A is symmetric, so we get

$$a_{11}u^2 + 2a_{12}uv + a_{22}v^2.$$

Such an expression is known a "quadratic form". In the n dimensional case with $(x - x_0) = u$, we get

$$a_{11}u_1^2 + a_{22}u_2^2 + \dots + a_{nn}u_n^2 + 2a_{12}u_1u_2 + 2a_{13}u_1u_3 + \dots + 2a_{(j-1)n}u_{j-1}u_n,$$

which is again known a quadratic form. One of the chief questions one asks about a quadratic form is whether it is positive whenever $u \neq 0$. In that case it is known a "positive definite" quadratic form. One major reason that question is important is its application in the next section of the text to maxima and minima of functions

$$f : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}.$$

2.4 THE SPACE \mathbb{R}^m AND ITS SUBSETS

OPEN AND CLOSED SETS IN \mathbb{R}^m

Definition. For $\delta > 0$ the set

$$B(a; \delta) = \{ x \in \mathbb{R}^m \mid d(a, x) < \delta \}$$

is known the ball with center $a \in M$ of radius r or the r -neighborhood of the point $a \in M$.

Definition. A set $G \subset M$ is open in M if for every point $x \in G$ there is a ball $B(x; \delta)$ such that $B(x; \delta) \subset G$.

Example. M is an open set in M .

Example. The empty set \emptyset contains no points at all and hence can be regarded as satisfying Definition 2, that is, \emptyset is an open set in M .

Example. A ball $B(a; r)$ is an open set in M . Indeed, if $x \in B(a; r)$, that is, $d(a, x) < r$, then for $0 < \delta < r - d(a, x)$, we have $B(x; \delta) \subset B(a; r)$, since

$$(x \in B(x; \delta)) \Rightarrow (d(x, a) < \delta) \Rightarrow$$

$$\Rightarrow (d(a, a) < d(a, x) + d(x, a) < d(a, x) + r - d(a, x) = r).$$

Example. A set $G = \{ x \in M \mid d(a, x) > r \}$, that is, the set of points whose distance from a fixed point $a \in M$ is larger than r , is open. This fact is easy to verify using the triangle inequality for the metric.

Definition. The set $F \subset M$ is closed in M if its complement $G = M \setminus F$ is open in M .

Example. The set $B[a; r] = \{ x \in M \mid d(a, x) \leq r \}$, $r > 0$, that is, the set of points whose distance from a fixed point $a \in M$ is at most r , is closed, as follows from Definition. The set $B[a; r]$ is known the closed ball with center a of radius r .

Proposition The union $\bigcup G_\alpha$ of the sets of any system $\{ G_\alpha, \alpha \in A \}$

of open sets in M is an open set in M .

n

The intersection $\bigcap_{i=1}^n G_i$ of a finite number of open sets in M is an

Notes

$\bigcap_{a \in A} F_a$

open set in M .

The intersection $\bigcap_{a \in A} F_a$ of the sets of any system $\{ F_a, a \in A \}$ of

closed sets F_a in M is a closed set in M .

$\bigcup_{i=1}^n F_i$

The union $\bigcup_{i=1}^n F_i$ of a finite number of closed sets in M is a closed

$\bigcap_{a \in A} F_a$

set in M .

Proof. If $x \in \bigcap_{a \in A} F_a$, then there exists $a_0 \in A$ such that $x \in F_{a_0}$, and

consequently there is a δ -neighborhood $B(x, \delta) \subset F_{a_0}$.

But then $B(x, \delta) \subset \bigcap_{a \in A} F_a$.

$a \in A$

$\bigcup_{i=1}^n F_i$

Let $x \in \bigcup_{i=1}^n F_i$. Then $x \in F_i$, $(i=1, \dots, n)$. Let $\delta_i > 0$ be positive

$\delta_i > 0$

numbers such that $B(x, \delta_i) \subset F_i$, $(i=1, \dots, n)$. Setting $\delta = \min\{\delta_1, \dots, \delta_n\}$,

$\delta > 0$

we obviously find that $\delta > 0$ and $B(x, \delta) \subset \bigcup_{i=1}^n F_i$

$\bigcap_{a \in A} F_a$

Let us show that the set $\bigcap_{a \in A} F_a$ is complementary to $\bigcup_{a \in A} F_a$ in M

'

is an open set in M .

Indeed,

$$c(\cap_{n \in \mathbb{N}} F_n) = \cap_{n \in \mathbb{N}} c(F_n) = \cap_{n \in \mathbb{N}} U_n$$

$$a \in \bigcap_{n \in \mathbb{N}} U_n \iff a \in U_n \text{ for all } n \in \mathbb{N}$$

where the sets $G_n = C(F_n)$ are open in M . Part a) now follows from a), b) Similarly, from b) we obtain

$$\cap_{n \in \mathbb{N}} U_n = \bigcup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} U_n$$

$$c(\bigcup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} U_n) = \bigcup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} c(U_n) = \bigcup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} F_n$$

$$2 = 1 \cup 2 = 1 \cup 2 = 1$$

Example. The set $S(a; r) = \{ x \in M \mid d(a, x) = r \}$, $r > 0$, is known the sphere of radius r with center $a \in M$. The complement of $S(a; r)$ in M , is the union of open sets. Hence by the proposition just proved it is open, and the sphere $S(a; r)$ is closed in M .

Definition. An open set in M containing a given point is known a neighborhood of that point in M .

In particular, the ϵ -neighborhood of a point is a neighborhood of it.

Definition. In relation to a set $E \subset M$ a point $x \in M$ is an interior point if some neighborhood of it is contained in E ; an exterior point if it is an interior point of the complement of E in M ; a boundary point if it is neither an interior point nor an exterior point.

It follows from this definition that the characteristic property of a boundary point of a set is that every neighborhood of it contains both points of the set and points not in the set.

Example. The sphere $S(a; r)$, $r > 0$ is the set of boundary points of both the open ball $B(a; r)$ and the closed ball $B\{a; r\}$.

Example. A point $a \in M$ is a boundary point of the set $M \setminus \{a\}$, which has no exterior points.

Notes

Example. All points of the sphere $S(a;r)$ are boundary points of it; regarded as a subset of M_m , the sphere $S(a;r)$ has no interior points.

Definition. A point $a \in M_m$ is a limit point of the set $E \subset M_m$ if for any neighborhood $O(a)$ of a the intersection $E \cap O(a)$ is an infinite set.

Definition. The union of a set E and all its limit points in M_m is the closure of E in M_m .

The closure of the set E is usually denoted \bar{E} .

Example. The set $\bar{B}(a;r) = B(a;r) \cup S(a;r)$ is the set of limit points of the open ball $B(a;r)$; that is why $\bar{B}(a;r)$, in contrast to $B(a;r)$, is known as a closed ball.

Example. $\bar{S}(a;r) = S(a;r)$.

Proposition. $(F \text{ is closed in } M_m) \Leftrightarrow (F = \bar{F} \text{ in } M_m)$.

In other words, F is closed in M_m if and only if it contains all its limit points.

Proof. Let F be closed in M_m , $x \in M_m$, and $x \notin F$. Then the open set $G = M_m \setminus F$ is a neighborhood of x that contains no points of F . Thus we have shown that if $x \notin F$, then x is not a limit point of F .

Let $F = \bar{F}$. We shall verify that the set $G = M_m \setminus F$ is open in M_m . If $x \in G$, then $x \notin F$, and therefore x is not a limit point of F . Hence there is a neighborhood of x containing only a finite number of points x_1, \dots, x_n of F .

Since $x \notin F$, one can construct, for example, balls about x , $O_1(x), \dots, O_n(x)$

such

such that $x_i \in O_i(x)$. Then $O(x) = \bigcap_{i=1}^n O_i(x)$ is an open neighborhood of x

$2=1$

containing no points of F at all, that is, $0(x) \subset M_m \setminus F$ and hence the set $M_m \setminus F = M_m \setminus F$ is open. Therefore F is closed in M_m . \square

Compact Sets in M_m

Definition. A set $K \subset M_m$ is compact if from every covering of K by sets that are open in M_m one can extract a finite covering.

Example. A closed interval $[a, b] \subset M_1$ is compact by the finite covering Theorem (Heine-Borel theorem).

Example A generalization to M_m of the concept of a closed interval is the set

$$I = \{ x \in M_m \mid a_i < x_i < b_i, i=1, \dots, m \},$$

which is known as an m -dimensional interval, or an m -dimensional block or an m -dimensional parallelepiped.

We shall show that I is compact in M_m .

Proof. Let that from some open covering of I one cannot extract a finite covering. Bisecting each of the coordinate closed intervals $P = \{ x_1 \in M : a_i < x_1 < b_i \}, (i=1, \dots, m)$, we break the interval I into 2^m intervals, at least one of which does not admit a covering by a finite number of sets from the open system we started with. We proceed with this interval exactly as with the original interval. Continuing this division process, we obtain a sequence of nested intervals $I = I \supset I_2 \supset I_3 \supset \dots \supset I_n \supset \dots$, none of which admits a finite covering. If $I_n = \{ x \in M_m \mid a_i^{(n)} < x_i < b_i^{(n)}, i, \dots, m \}$, then for each $i \in \{ 1, \dots, m \}$ the coordinate closed intervals $a_i^{(n)} < x_i < b_i^{(n)}$ ($n=1, 2, \dots$) form, by construction, a system of nested closed intervals whose lengths tend to zero. By finding the point $x_i \in [a_i^{(n)}, b_i^{(n)}]$ common to all of these intervals for each $i \in \{ 1, \dots, m \}$, we obtain a point $x = (x_1, \dots,$

Notes

$x \in M$ belonging to all the intervals $I = J_1, J_2, \dots, J_n$. Since $x \in E$, there is an open set G in the system of covering sets such that $x \in G$. Then for some $\delta > 0$ we also have $B(x; \delta) \subset G$. But by construction and the relation there exists N such that $I_n \subset B(x; \delta) \subset G$ for $n > N$. We have now reached a contradiction with the fact that the intervals I_n do not admit a finite covering by sets of the given system.

Proposition. If K is a compact set in M_m , then K is closed in M_m ;

any closed subset of M_m contained in K is itself compact.

Proof. We shall show that any point $a \in M_m$ that is a limit point of K must belong to K . Suppose $a \notin K$. For each point $x \in K$ we

construct a neighborhood $G(x)$ such that a has a neighborhood disjoint from

$G(x)$. The set $\{G(x)\}, x \in K$, consisting of all such neighborhoods forms an open covering of the compact set K , from which we can select a finite covering $G(x_1), \dots, G(x_n)$. If now $O_i(a)$ is a neighborhood of a such that

$G(x_i) \cap O_i(a) = \emptyset$, then the set $O(a) = \bigcup_{i=1}^n O_i(a)$ is also a neighborhood of

a , and obviously $K \cap O(a) = \emptyset$. Thus a cannot be a limit point of K .

Suppose F is a closed subset of M_m and $F \subset K$. Let $\{G_\alpha\}, \alpha \in A$, be a covering of F by sets that are open in M_m . Adjoining to this collection the

open set $G = M_m \setminus F$, we obtain an open covering of M_m , and in particular an open covering of K , from which we select a finite covering of K . This finite covering of K will also cover the set F . Observing that $G \cap F = \emptyset$, one can say that if G belongs to this finite covering, we will still have a finite covering of F by sets of the original system $\{G_\alpha\}, \alpha \in A$, if we remove G .

Definition. The diameter of a set $E \subset M_m$ is the quantity

$$d(E) := \sup_{x_1, x_2 \in E} d(x_1, x_2).$$

$$x_1, x_2 \in E$$

Definition. A set $E \subset \mathbb{R}^m$ is bounded if its diameter is finite.

Proposition. If K is a compact set in \mathbb{R}^m , then K is a bounded subset of \mathbb{R}^m .

Proof Take an arbitrary point $a \in \mathbb{R}^m$ and consider the sequence of open balls $\{B(a; r_n)\}$, $(n=1, 2, \dots)$. They form an open covering of \mathbb{R}^m and consequently also of K . If K were not bounded, it would be impossible to select a finite covering of K from this sequence.

Proposition. The set $K \subset \mathbb{R}^m$ is compact if and only if K is closed and bounded in \mathbb{R}^m .

Proof The necessity of these conditions .

Let us verify that the conditions are sufficient. Since K is a bounded set, there exists an m -dimensional interval I containing K .

Example. I is compact in \mathbb{R}^m . But if $A \subset I$ is a closed set contained in the compact set I , then it is itself compact.

The distance $d(E, E_2)$ between the sets $E, E_2 \subset \mathbb{R}^m$ is the quantity

$$d(E, E_2) := \inf_{x_1 \in E, x_2 \in E_2} d(x_1, x_2).$$

$$x_1 \in E, x_2 \in E_2$$

Give an example of closed sets E_1 and E_2 in \mathbb{R}^m having no points in common for which $d(E_1, E_2) = 0$.

Show that the closure \bar{E} in \mathbb{R}^m of any set $E \subset \mathbb{R}^m$ is a closed set in \mathbb{R}^m ; the set ∂E of boundary points of any set $E \subset \mathbb{R}^m$ is a closed set;

Notes

if G is an open set in \mathbb{R}^m and F is closed in \mathbb{R}^m , then $G \setminus F$ is open in \mathbb{R}^m .

Show that if $K \supset D \supset K_2 \supset \dots \supset K_n \supset \dots$ is a sequence of nested nonempty

compact sets, then $\bigcap_{i=1}^{\infty} K_i \neq \emptyset$.

compact sets, then $\bigcap_{i=1}^{\infty} K_i \neq \emptyset$.

$i=1$

In the space \mathbb{R}^k a two-dimensional sphere S^2 and a circle S^1 are situated so that the distance from any point of the sphere to any point of the circle is the same.

Is this possible?

Consider problem for spheres S^m , S^n of arbitrary dimension in \mathbb{R}^k .

Under what relation on m , n , and k is this situation possible

2.5 LIMITS AND CONTINUITY OF FUNCTIONS OF SEVERAL VARIABLES

The Limit of a Function

In the operation of passing to the limit for a real-valued function $f: X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ defined on a set in which a base B was fixed.

In the next few sections we shall be considering functions $f: X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ defined on subsets of \mathbb{R}^m with values in \mathbb{R}^n or more generally in \mathbb{R}^n , $n \in \mathbb{N}$. We shall now make a number of additions to the theory of limits connected with the specifics of this class of functions.

However, we begin with the basic general definition.

Definition. A point $A \in \mathbb{R}^n$ is the limit of the mapping $f: X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ over a base B in X if for every neighborhood $V(A)$ of the point there

exists an element $B \in \mathcal{B}$ of the base whose image $f(B)$ is contained in $V(A)$.

In brief,

$$(\lim_{x \rightarrow A} f(x) = A) := (\forall \epsilon > 0 \exists B \in \mathcal{B} (f(B) \subset V_\epsilon(A))).$$

We observe that the definition of the limit of a function $f: X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ is exactly

the same as the definition of the limit of a function $f: X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ if we keep in mind what a neighborhood $V_\epsilon(A)$ of a point $A \in \mathbb{R}^n$ is for every $\epsilon \in \mathbb{N}$.

Definition. A mapping $f: X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ is bounded if the set $f(X) \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ is bounded in \mathbb{R}^n .

Definition. Let \mathcal{B} be a base in A . A mapping $f: X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ is ultimately bounded over the base \mathcal{B} if there exists an element $B \in \mathcal{B}$ on which f is bounded. Taking these definitions into account and using the same reasoning that one can verify without difficulty that

a function $f: X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ can have at most one limit over a given base \mathcal{B} in

X ;

a function $f: X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ having a limit over a base \mathcal{B} is ultimately bounded over that base.

Definition can be rewritten in another form making explicit use of the metric in \mathbb{R}^n

Definition

$$(\lim_{x \rightarrow A} f(x) = A \in \mathbb{R}^n) := (\forall \epsilon > 0 \exists B \in \mathcal{B} \forall x \in B (d(f(x), A) < \epsilon))$$

Or

Notes

Definition

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f(x_n) = A \iff \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} d(f(x_n), A) = 0.$$

The specific property of a mapping $f: X \rightarrow M_n$ is that, since a point $y \in M_n$ is an ordered n -tuple (y_1, \dots, y_n) of real numbers, defining a function

$f: X \rightarrow M_n$ is equivalent to defining n real-valued functions $f_i: X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ ($i=1, \dots, n$), where $f(x) = (f_1(x), \dots, f_n(x))$.

If $A = (A_1, \dots, A_n)$ and $y = (y_1, \dots, y_n)$, we have the inequalities

$$|y_i - A_i| \leq d(y, A) \leq \sqrt[n]{\sum_{i=1}^n |y_i - A_i|^2},$$

$$1 \leq i \leq n$$

from which one can observe that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f(x_n) = A \iff \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f_i(x_n) = A_i \quad (i=1, \dots, n),$$

that is, convergence in M_n is coordinatewise.

Now Let $X = \mathbb{N}$ be the set of natural numbers and B the base k oo, $k \in \mathbb{N}$, in X . A function $f: \mathbb{N} \rightarrow M_n$ in this case is a sequence $\{f(k)\}_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$ of points of M_n .

Definition. A sequence $\{y_k\}_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$ of points $G M_n$ is fundamental (a Cauchy sequence) if for every $\epsilon > 0$ there exists a number $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that

$$d(y_k, y_{k'}) < \epsilon \quad \text{for all } k, k' > N.$$

One can conclude from the inequalities that a sequence of points $\{y_k\}_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a Cauchy sequence if and only if each sequence of coordinates having the same labels $\{y_{ik}\}_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$, $i=1, \dots, n$, is a Cauchy sequence.

Taking account of relation and the Cauchy criterion for numerical sequences, one can now assert that a sequence of points M_n converges if and only if it is a Cauchy sequence.

In other words, the Cauchy criterion is also valid in M_n .

Later on we shall call metric spaces in which every Cauchy sequence has a limit complete metric spaces. Thus we have now established that M_n is a complete metric space for every $n \in \mathbb{N}$.

Definition. The oscillation of a function $f: X \rightarrow M_n$ on a set $E \subset X$ is the quantity

$$w(f; E) := d(f(E)),$$

where $d(f(E))$ is the diameter of $f(E)$.

As one can observe, this is a direct generalization of the definition of the oscillation of a real-valued function, which Definition becomes when $n=1$.

The validity of the following Cauchy criterion for the existence of a limit for functions $f: X \rightarrow M_n$ with values in M_n results from the completeness of M_n .

Theorem. Let X be a set and B a base in X . A function $f: X \rightarrow M_n$ has a limit over the base B if and only if for every $\epsilon > 0$ there exists an element $B \in B$ of the base on which the oscillation of the function is less than ϵ .

Thus,

$$\lim_{x \in B} f(x) = s \iff \forall \epsilon > 0 \exists B \in B (w(f; B) < \epsilon).$$

This is a verbatim repetition of the proof of the Cauchy criterion for numerical functions, except for one minor change: $|f(x_1) - f(x_2)|$ must be replaced throughout by $d(f(x_1), f(x_2))$.

Notes

One can also verify another way, regarding the Cauchy criterion as known for real-valued functions and using relations.

The important theorem on the limit of a composite function also remains valid for functions with values in M_n .

Theorem. Let Y be a set, B_y a base in Y , and $g : Y \rightarrow M_n$ a mapping having a limit over the base B_y .

Let X be a set, B_x a base in X , and $f : X \rightarrow Y$ a mapping of X into Y such that for each $B_y \in B_y$ there exists $B_x \in B_x$ such that the image $f(B_x)$ is contained in B_y .

Under these conditions the composition $g \circ f : X \rightarrow M_n$ of the mappings f and g is defined and has a limit over the base B_x , and

$$\lim(g \circ f)(x) = \lim g(y).$$

$I_{S_x} \quad O_y$

The proof can be carried out either by repeating the replacing M by M_n , or by invoking that theorem and using relation

Up to now we have considered functions $f : X \rightarrow M_n$ with values in M_n , without specifying their domains of definition X in any way. From now on we shall primarily be interested in the case when X is a subset of M_m .

As before, we make the following conventions.

$U(a)$ is a neighborhood of the point $a \in M_m$;

$o \quad o$

$U(a)$ is a deleted neighborhood of $a \in M_m$, that is, $U^{\circ}(a) := U(a) \setminus a$;

$U_e(c)$ is a neighborhood of a in the set $E \subset M_m$, that is, $U_e(c) := E \cap U(a)$;

$o \quad oo$

$U_e(o)$ is a deleted neighborhood of a in E , that is, $U_e(o)^{\circ} := E \cap U(a)^{\circ}$,

$x \rightarrow a$ is the base of deleted neighborhoods of a in M ;

$x \rightarrow \infty$ is the base of neighborhoods of infinity, that is, the base consisting of the sets $M \setminus B(a; r)$;

$x \rightarrow a, x \in E$ or $(\exists x \rightarrow a)$ is the base of deleted neighborhoods of a in E if a is a limit point of E ;

$x \rightarrow \infty, x \in E$ or $(\exists x \rightarrow \infty)$ is the base of neighborhoods of infinity in E consisting of the sets $E \setminus B(a; r)$, if E is an unbounded set.

In accordance with these definitions, one can, for example, give the following specific form of the limit of a function when speaking of a function $f: E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ mapping a set $E \subset \mathbb{R}^m$ into \mathbb{R}^n :

$$(\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) = A) := (\forall \epsilon > 0 \exists \delta > 0 \forall x \in E \setminus B(a; \delta) (d(f(x), A) < \epsilon)).$$

$$\setminus B(x; \delta) \quad /$$

The same thing can be written another way:

$$(\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) = A) :=$$

$$(\forall \epsilon > 0 \exists \delta > 0 \forall x \in E (0 < d(x, a) < \delta \Rightarrow d(f(x), A) < \epsilon)).$$

$$= (\forall \epsilon > 0 \exists \delta > 0 \forall x \in E (0 < d(x, a) < \delta \Rightarrow d(f(x), A) < \epsilon)).$$

Here it is understood that the distances $d(x, a)$ and $d(f(x), A)$ are measured in the spaces (M, d) and (N, d) in which these points lie.

Finally,

$$(\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) = A) := (\forall \epsilon > 0 \exists \delta > 0 \forall x \in M \setminus B(a; \delta) (d(f(x), A) < \epsilon)).$$

Let us also agree to say that, in the case of a mapping $f: X \rightarrow Y$, the phrase " $f(x) \rightarrow \infty$ " in the base means that for any ball $B(A; r) \subset Y$ there exists $B \in \mathcal{B}$ of the base \mathcal{B} such that $f(B) \subset Y \setminus B(A; r)$.

Example. Let $f: \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ be the mapping assigning to each $x = (x_1, \dots, x_m)$ in \mathbb{R}^m its z th coordinate x_z . Thus

$$f(x) = (x_1, \dots, x_m).$$

Notes

If $a=(a_1, \dots, a_m)$, then obviously

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{1}{\|x-a\|^m} = \infty.$$

The function $x \mapsto \frac{1}{\|x-a\|^m}$ does not tend to any finite value nor to infinity as $\|x-a\| \rightarrow \infty$ if $m > 1$.

On the other hand,

$$m < 1$$

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{1}{\|x-a\|^m} = 0.$$

$$m = 1$$

One should not think that the limit of a function of several variables can be found by computing successively the limits with respect to each of its coordinates. The following examples show why this is not the case.

Example Let the function $f: \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be defined at the point $(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ as follows:

$$f(x, y) = \frac{x^2 - y^2}{x^2 + y^2},$$

$$f(x, y) = \frac{x^2 - y^2}{x^2 + y^2}$$

$$= 0, \text{ if } x^2 + y^2 = 0.$$

Then $f(0, y) = f(x, 0) = 0$, while $f(x, x) = \frac{x^2 - x^2}{x^2 + x^2} = 0$ for $x \neq 0$.

Hence this function has no limit as $(x, y) \rightarrow (0, 0)$.

On the other hand,

$$\lim_{y \rightarrow 0} (\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} f(x, y)) = \lim_{y \rightarrow 0} 0 = 0,$$

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} (\lim_{y \rightarrow 0} f(x, y)) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} 0 = 0.$$

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} (\lim_{y \rightarrow 0} f(x, y)) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} 0 = 0.$$

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} (\lim_{y \rightarrow 0} f(x, y)) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} 0 = 0.$$

Example. For the function

$$f(x, y) = \frac{x^2 - y^2}{x^2 + y^2},$$

$$f(x, y) = \frac{x^2 - y^2}{x^2 + y^2}$$

$f(x, y)$.

0, if $x^2 + y^2 = 0$,

we have

$\lim_{(x,y) \rightarrow (0,0)} f(x, y) = 1$,

$\lim_{(x,y) \rightarrow (0,0)} f(x, y) = 1$

$\lim_{(x,y) \rightarrow (0,0)} f(x, y) = 1$

$\lim_{(x,y) \rightarrow (0,0)} f(x, y) = 1$

Example For the function

$f(x, y) = x + y \sin \frac{1}{x}$, if $x \neq 0$,

$f(x, y) = 0$

0, if $x = 0$,

we have

$\lim_{(x,y) \rightarrow (0,0)} f(x, y) = 0$,

$\lim_{(x,y) \rightarrow (0,0)} f(x, y) = 0$

$\lim_{(x,y) \rightarrow (0,0)} f(x, y) = 0$

$\lim_{(x,y) \rightarrow (0,0)} f(x, y) = 0$

yet at the same time the iterated limit

$\lim_{y \rightarrow 0} \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} f(x, y)$

$\lim_{y \rightarrow 0} \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} f(x, y)$

does not exist at all.

Example The function

$f(x, y) = \frac{1}{x^2 + y^2 + 1}$

$f(x, y) = \frac{1}{x^2 + y^2 + 1}$

0, if $x^2 + y^2 = 0$,

Notes

has a limit of zero upon approach to the origin along any ray

$$x=at, y=fit.$$

At the same time, the function equals $\sqrt{a^2 + a^2}$ at any point of the form (a, a) , where $a > 0$, and so the function has no limit as $(x, y) \rightarrow (0, 0)$.

2.6 CONTINUITY OF A FUNCTION OF SEVERAL VARIABLES AND PROPERTIES OF CONTINUOUS FUNCTIONS

Let E be a subset of M^m and $f: E \rightarrow M^n$ a function defined on E with values in M^n .

Definition. The function $f: E \rightarrow M^n$ is continuous at $a \in E$ if for every neighborhood V of the value $f(a)$ that the function lets at a , there exists a neighborhood $U_\epsilon(a)$ of a in E whose image $f(U_\epsilon(a))$ is contained in V .

Thus

$$(f: E \rightarrow M^n \text{ is continuous at } a \in E) := \\ = (\forall V \text{ neighborhood of } f(a) \exists U_\epsilon(a) \text{ neighborhood of } a \text{ in } E \text{ such that } f(U_\epsilon(a)) \subset V).$$

We observe that this has the same form as Definition for continuity of a real-valued function, which we are familiar with from. As was the case there, we can give the following alternate expression for this definition:

$$(f: E \rightarrow M^n \text{ is continuous at } a \in E) := \\ = (\forall \epsilon > 0 \exists \delta > 0 \forall x \in E (d(x, a) < \delta \Rightarrow d(f(x), f(a)) < \epsilon)),$$

or, if a is a limit point of E ,

$$(f: E \rightarrow M^n \text{ is continuous at } a \in E) := (\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) = f(a)).$$

$E \subset \mathbb{R}^n$

As noted, the concept of continuity is of interest precisely in connection with a point $a \in E$ that is a limit point of the set E on which the function f is defined.

It follows from Definition and relation that the mapping $f: E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$ defined by the relation

$(x_1, \dots, x_n) \in E \rightarrow (y_1, \dots, y_m) = f(x_1, \dots, x_n)$ is continuous at a point if and only if each of the functions $y_i = f_i(x_1, \dots, x_n)$ is continuous at that point.

In particular, we recall that we defined a path in \mathbb{R}^m to be a mapping $f: I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$ of an interval $I \subset \mathbb{R}$ defined by continuous functions $f_1(x), \dots, f_n(x)$ in the form

$$f(x) = (y_1, \dots, y_m) = (f_1(x), \dots, f_m(x)).$$

Thus we can now say that a path in \mathbb{R}^m is a continuous mapping of an interval $I \subset \mathbb{R}$ of the real line into \mathbb{R}^m .

By analogy with the definition of oscillation of a real-valued function at a point, we introduce the concept of oscillation at a point for a function with values in \mathbb{R}^m .

Let E be a subset of \mathbb{R}^n , $a \in E$, and $E^*(a; r) = E \cap B(a; r)$.

Definition. The oscillation of the function $f: E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$ at the point $a \in E$ is the quantity

$$w(f; a) := \lim_{r \rightarrow 0^+} w(f; E^*(a; r)).$$

$$r \rightarrow 0^+ \text{ and } \epsilon > 0$$

From Definition of continuity of a function, taking account of the properties of a limit and the Cauchy criterion, we obtain a set of frequently used local properties of continuous functions. We now list them.

Check your Progress-1

Notes

Discuss Functions Of Several Variables

Discuss Limits And Continuity of functions of several variables

2.7 LET US SUM UP

In this unit we have discussed the definition and example of Functions Of Several Variables, The Space Of Linear Transformations From \mathbb{R}^m To \mathbb{R}^n

The Space \mathbb{R}^m And Its Subsets, Open And Closed Sets In \mathbb{R}^m , Limits And Continuity Of Functions Of Several Variables, Continuity Of A Function Of Several Variables, And Properties Of Continuous Functions

2.8 KEYWORDS

Functions Of Several Variables: Here numerical-valued functions $f(x)$ in which the number $f(x)$ was determined by giving a single number x from the domain of definition of the function.

The Space Of Linear Transformations From \mathbb{R}^m To \mathbb{R}^n Linear transformations mapping \mathbb{R}^m To \mathbb{R}^n We can add such linear transformations in the usual way: $(L_1 + L_2)(x) = L_1(x) + L_2(x)$

The Space \mathbb{R}^m And Its Subsets: Continuity Of A Function Of Several Variables And Properties Of Continuous Functions

Open And Closed Sets In \mathbb{M}^m For $\delta > 0$ the set $B(a; \delta) = \{ x \in \mathbb{M}^m \mid d(a, x) < \delta \}$ is known the ball with center $a \in \mathbb{M}^m$ of radius δ or the δ -neighborhood of the point $a \in \mathbb{M}^m$.

Limits And Continuity Of Functions Of Several Variables: The Limit of a Function In the operation of passing to the limit for a real-valued function $f: X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ defined on a set in which a base B was fixed

Continuity Of A Function Of Several Variables And Properties Of Continuous Functions: Let E be a subset of \mathbb{M}^m and $f: E \rightarrow \mathbb{M}^n$ a function defined on E with values in \mathbb{M}^n .

2.9 QUESTIONS FOR REVIEW

Explain Functions Of Several Variables

Explain Limits And Continuity Of Functions Of Several Variables

2.10 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

Functions Of Several Variables (answer for Check your Progress-1 Q)

Limits And Continuity Of Functions Of Several Variables

(answer for Check your Progress-1 Q)

2.11 REFERENCES

- System of Equation
- Function of Real Variables
- Calculus of Several Variables
- Advance Calculus of Several Variables

UNIT - 3: LOCAL PROPERTIES OF CONTINUOUS FUNCTIONS

STRUCTURE

3.0 Objectives

3.1 Introduction

3.2 Local Properties Of Continuous Functions

3.3 Linear Transformations $L : \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$

3.4 The Norm In \mathbb{R}^m

3.5 The Euclidean Structure On \mathbb{R}^m

3.6 The Differential Of A Function Of Several Variables

3.7 The Differential And Partial Derivatives Of A Real-Valued Function

3.8 Coordinate Representation Of Differential Of A Mapping Jacobi Matrix

3.9 Continuity, Partial Derivatives & Differentiability of Function at A Point

3.10 Basic Laws of Differentiation Linearity of Operation of Differentiation

3.11 Differentiation of A Composition of Mappings (Chain Rule) The Main Theorem

3.12 Differential & Partial Derivatives of A Composite Real Valued Function

3.13 Let Us Sum Up

3.14 Keywords

3.15 Questions For Review

3.16 Answers To Check Your Progress

3.0 OBJECTIVES

After studying this unit, you should be able to:

Local Properties Of Continuous Functions

Linear Transformations $L : \mathbb{R}^m \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$

The Norm In \mathbb{R}^m

The Euclidean Structure On \mathbb{R}^m

The Differential Of A Function Of Several Variables

The Differential And Partial Derivatives Of A Real-Valued Function

Coordinate Representation Of The Differential Of A
Mapping. The Jacobi Matrix

Continuity, Partial Derivatives And Differentiability Of A Function At A
Point

The Basic Laws Of Differentiation Linearity Of The
Operation Of Differentiation

Differentiation Of A Composition Of Mappings (Chain Rule)
The Main Theorem

The Differential And Partial Derivatives Of A Composite Real Valued
Function

3.1 INTRODUCTION

In mathematics advanced calculus whose aim is to provide a firm logical foundation of analysis of calculus and a course in linear algebra treats analysis in one variable & analysis in several variables

Local Properties Of Continuous Functions

Linear Transformations $L : \mathbb{R}^m \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$

Notes

The Norm In \mathbb{R}^m

The Euclidean Structure On \mathbb{R}^m

The Differential Of A Function Of Several Variables

The Differential And Partial Derivatives Of A Real-Valued Function

Coordinate Representation Of The Differential Of A

Mapping. The Jacobi Matrix

Continuity, Partial Derivatives And Differentiability Of A Function At A Point

The Basic Laws Of Differentiation Linearity Of The Operation Of Differentiation

Differentiation Of A Composition Of Mappings (Chain Rule)

The Main Theorem

The Differential And Partial Derivatives Of A Composite Real Valued Function

3.2 LOCAL PROPERTIES OF CONTINUOUS FUNCTIONS

A mapping $f : E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ of a set $E \subset \mathbb{R}^m$ is continuous at a point $a \in E$ if and only if $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) = f(a)$.

A mapping $f : E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ that is continuous at $a \in E$ is bounded in some neighborhood $U_\epsilon(a)$ of that point.

If the mapping $g : Y \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^k$ of the set $Y \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ is continuous at a point $y_0 \in Y$ and the mapping $f : X \rightarrow Y$ of the set $X \subset \mathbb{R}^m$ is continuous at a point $x_0 \in X$ and $f(x_0) = y_0$, then the mapping $g \circ f : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^k$ is defined, and it is continuous at $x_0 \in X$.

Real-valued functions possess, in addition, the following properties.

If the function $f : E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is continuous at the point $a \in E$ and $f(a) > 0$ (or $f(a) < 0$), there exists a neighborhood $U_\epsilon(a)$ of a in E such that $f(x) > 0$ (resp. $f(x) < 0$) for all $x \in U_\epsilon(a)$.

If the functions $f : E \rightarrow M$ and $g : E \rightarrow M$ are continuous at a $G \in E$, then any linear combination of them $(af + (3g) : E \rightarrow R$, where $a, (3 \in R, t \in \mathbb{R}$ product $(f - g) : E \rightarrow R$, and, if $g(x) \neq 0$ on E , their quotient $(\frac{f}{g}) : E \rightarrow M$ are defined on E and continuous at a .

Let us agree to say that the function $f : E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ is continuous on the set E if it is continuous at each point of the set.

The set of functions $f : E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ that are continuous on E will be denoted $C(E; \mathbb{R}^n)$ or simply $C(E)$, if the range of values of the functions is unambiguously determined from the context. As a rule, this abbreviation will be used when $\mathbb{R}^n = \mathbb{R}$.

Example. The functions $(a_1, \dots, a_m) \cdot x = (a_1 x, \dots, a_m x)$, mapping \mathbb{R}^m onto \mathbb{R}^m (projections) are obviously continuous at each point $a = (a_1, \dots, a_m) \in \mathbb{R}^m$, since $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} \sum_{i=1}^m |x_i - a_i| = 0$.

$x \rightarrow a$

Example. Any function $f(x)$ defined on \mathbb{R} , for example $x \mapsto \sin x$, can also be regarded as a function $(x, y) \mapsto f(x)$ defined, say, on \mathbb{R}^2 . In that case,

if f was continuous as a function on \mathbb{R} , then the new function $(x, y) \mapsto f(x)$ will be continuous as a function on \mathbb{R}^2 . This can be verified either directly from the definition of continuity or by remarking that the function F is the composition $(f \circ \pi_1)(x, y) = f(x)$ of continuous functions.

In particular, it follows from this, when we take account of c) and e), that the functions

$$f(x, y) = \sin x + e^{xy}, \quad f(x, y) = \arctan(\ln(|x| + |y| + 1)),$$

for example, are continuous on \mathbb{R}^2 .

We remark that the reasoning just used is essentially local, and the fact that the functions f and F studied in Example were defined on the entire real line \mathbb{R} or the plane \mathbb{R}^2 respectively was purely an accidental circumstance.

Notes

Example. The function $f(x, y)$ of Example 2 is continuous at any point of the space \mathbb{R}^2 except $(0, 0)$. We remark that, despite the discontinuity of $f(x, y)$ at this point, the function is continuous in either of its two variables for each fixed value of the other variable.

Example . If a function $f: E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ is continuous on the set E and E' is a subset of E , then the restriction $f|_{E'}$ of f to this subset is continuous on E' , as follows immediately from the definition of continuity of a function at a point.

We now turn to the global properties of continuous functions. To state them for functions $f: E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$, we first give two definitions.

Definition . A mapping $f: E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ of a set $E \subset \mathbb{R}^m$ into \mathbb{R}^n is uniformly continuous on E if for every $\epsilon > 0$ there is a number $\delta > 0$ such that

$d(f(x_1), f(x_2)) < \epsilon$ for any points $x_1, x_2 \in E$ such that $d(x_1, x_2) < \delta$.

As before, the distances $d(x_1, x_2)$ and $d(f(x_1), f(x_2))$ are let d to be measured in \mathbb{R}^m and \mathbb{R}^n respectively.

When $m=n=1$, this definition is the definition of uniform continuity of numerical-valued functions.

Definition . A set $E \subset \mathbb{R}^m$ is path wise connected if for any pair of its points x_1, x_2 , there exists a path $r: I \rightarrow E$ with support in E and endpoints at these points.

In other words, it is possible to go from any point $x_1 \in E$ to any other point $x_2 \in E$ without leaving E .

Since we shall not be considering any other concept of connectedness for a set except path wise connectedness for the time being, for the sake of brevity we shall temporarily call path wise connected sets simply connected.

Definition. A domain in \mathbb{R}^m is an open connected set.

Example. An open ball $B(a; r)$, $r > 0$, in \mathbb{R}^m is a domain. We already know that $B(a; r)$ is open in \mathbb{R}^m . Let us verify that the ball is connected.

Let

$x_0 = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_m)$ and $x_1 = (x_1', \dots, x_m')$ be two points of the ball. The path defined by the functions $x_i(t) = tx_i' + (1-t)x_i$, $(i=1, \dots, m)$, defined on the closed interval $0 \leq t \leq 1$, has x_0 and x_1 as its endpoints. In addition, its support lies in the ball $B(a; r)$, since, by Minkowski's inequality, for any $t \in [0, 1]$,

Example. The circle (one-dimensional sphere) of radius $r > 0$ is the subset of \mathbb{R}^2 given by the equation $(x_1)^2 + (x_2)^2 = r^2$. Setting $x_1 = r \cos t$, $x_2 = r \sin t$, we observe that any two points of the circle can be joined by a path that goes along the circle. Hence a circle is a connected set. However, this set is not a domain in \mathbb{R}^2 , since it is not open in \mathbb{R}^2 .

We now state the basic facts about continuous functions in the large.

Global properties of continuous functions

If a mapping $f : K \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ is continuous on a compact set $K \subset \mathbb{R}^m$, then it is uniformly continuous on K .

If a mapping $f : K \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ is continuous on a compact set $K \subset \mathbb{R}^m$, then it is bounded on K .

If a function $f : K \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is continuous on a compact set $K \subset \mathbb{R}^m$, then it attains its maximal and minimal values at some points of K .

If a function $f : E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is continuous on a connected set E and attains the values $f(a) = A$ and $f(b) = B$ at points $a, b \in E$, then for any C between A and B , there is a point $c \in E$ at which $f(c) = C$.

Earlier when we were studying the local and global properties of functions of one variable, we gave proofs of these properties that extend to the more general case considered here. The only change that must be made in the earlier proofs is that expressions of the type $|x - x_2|$ or $|f(x) - f(x_2)|$ must be replaced by $d(x_1, x_2)$ and $d(f(x_1), f(x_2))$, where d is the metric

Notes

in the space where the points in question are located. This remark applies fully to everything except the last statement d).

Proof, d) Let $r : I \rightarrow E$ be a path that is a continuous mapping of an interval

$[a, b] \subset \mathbb{R}$ such that $r(a) = a$, $r(b) = b$. By the connectedness of E there exists such a path. The function $f : I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, being the composition of continuous functions, is continuous; therefore there is a point $\tau \in [a, b]$ on the closed interval $[a, b]$ at which $f(\tau) = C$. Set $c = r(\tau)$. Then $c \in E$ and $f(c) = C$.

Example The sphere $S(0; r)$ defined in \mathbb{R}^m by the equation

$$x_1^2 + \dots + x_m^2 = r^2,$$

is a compact set.

Indeed, it follows from the continuity of the function

$$f(x_1, \dots, x_m) = x_1^2 + \dots + x_m^2$$

that the sphere is closed, and from the fact that $\|x\| < r$ ($i=1, \dots, m$) on the sphere that it is bounded.

The function

$$f(x_1, \dots, x_m) = x_1^2 + \dots + x_k^2 - (x_1^2 + \dots + x_m^2)$$

is continuous on all of \mathbb{R}^m , so that its restriction to the sphere is also continuous, and by the global property c) of continuous functions lets its minimal and maximal values on the sphere. At the points $(1, 0, \dots, 0)$ and $(0, \dots, 0, 1)$ this function lets the values 1 and -1 respectively. By the connectedness of the sphere (observe Problem 3 at the end of this section), global property d) of continuous functions now enables us to assert that there is a point on the sphere where this function lets the value 0.

Example. The open set $\mathbb{R}^m \setminus \{0\}$ for $r > 0$ is not a domain, since it is not connected.

Indeed, if $r : I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$ is a path one end of which is at the point $x =$

$(0, \dots, 0)$ and the other at some point $x = (x_1, \dots, x_m)$ such that $(x_1)^2 + \dots + (x_m)^2 > r^2$,

then the composition of the continuous functions $r : I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$ and $f : \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, where

$$f(x_1, \dots, x_m) = (x_1)^2 + \dots + (x_m)^2,$$

is a continuous function on I assuming values less than r^2 at one endpoint and greater than r^2 at the other. Hence there is a point τ on I at which $f(r(\tau)) = r^2$. Then the point $x = r(\tau)$ in the support of the path turns out to lie on the sphere $\{0\} \cup \{x \in \mathbb{R}^m : \|x\|^2 = r^2\}$. We have thus shown that it is impossible to get out of the ball $B(0; r) \subset \mathbb{R}^m$ without intersecting its boundary sphere $\{0\} \cup \{x \in \mathbb{R}^m : \|x\|^2 = r^2\}$.

3.3 LINEAR TRANSFORMATIONS

$L : \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$

We recall that a mapping $L : X \rightarrow Y$ from a vector space X into a vector space Y is known linear if

$$L(\alpha x_1 + \beta x_2) = \alpha L(x_1) + \beta L(x_2)$$

for any $x_1, x_2 \in X$, and $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{R}$. We shall be interested in linear mappings

$$L : \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n.$$

If $\{e_1, \dots, e_m\}$ and $\{e_1, \dots, e_n\}$ are fixed bases of \mathbb{R}^m and \mathbb{R}^n respectively, then, knowing the expansion

$$L(e_i) = a_{i1}e_1 + \dots + a_{in}e_n \quad (i=1, \dots, m)$$

of the images of the basis vectors under the linear mapping $L : \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$,

we can use the linearity of L to find the expansion of the image $L(h)$ of any vector $h = h_1e_1 + \dots + h_me_m$ in the basis $\{e_1, \dots, e_n\}$. To be specific,

Notes

$$L(h) = L(\sum_{i=1}^m h_i e_i) = \sum_{i=1}^m h_i L(e_i)$$

Hence, in coordinate notation:

$$L(h) = (a_{11}h_1, \dots, a_{n1}h_1 + \dots + a_{nm}h_m)$$

For a fixed basis in \mathbb{R}^n the mapping $L : \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ can thus be regarded as a set

$$L = \{L_1, \dots, L_n\}$$

of n (coordinate) mappings $U : \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$.

Taking account easily conclude that a mapping $L : \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ is linear if and only if each mapping U in the set is linear.

If as a column, taking account of relation we have

$$L(h) = (a_{11}h_1, \dots, a_{n1}h_1 + \dots + a_{nm}h_m)$$

$$L(h) = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11}h_1 + \dots + a_{1m}h_m \\ \vdots \\ a_{n1}h_1 + \dots + a_{nm}h_m \end{pmatrix}$$

$$L(h) = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & \dots & a_{1m} \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ a_{n1} & \dots & a_{nm} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} h_1 \\ \vdots \\ h_m \end{pmatrix}$$

Thus, fixing bases in \mathbb{R}^m and \mathbb{R}^n enables us to establish a one-to-one correspondence between linear transformations $L : \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ and $m \times n$ -matrices

(a^j) , $(i=1, \dots, m, j=1, \dots, n)$. When this is done, the i th column of the matrix (a^j) corresponding to the transformation L consists of the coordinates of $L(e_i)$, the image of the vector $e_i \in G = \{e_1, \dots, e_m\}$. The coordinates of the image of an arbitrary vector $h = \sum_{i=1}^m h_i e_i \in \mathbb{R}^m$ can be obtained from by multiplying the matrix of the linear transformation by the column of coordinates of h . Since \mathbb{R}^n has the structure of a vector space, one can speak of linear combinations $\sum_{i=1}^n \alpha_i f_i$ of mappings $f_i : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ and $f : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$,

setting

$$(A_1 \alpha_1 + A_2 \alpha_2)(x) := \alpha_1 f_1(x) + \alpha_2 f_2(x)$$

In particular, a linear combination of linear transformations $L_1 : \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ and $L_2 : \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ is, according to the definition a mapping

$$h^i L_1(h) + \sqrt{2} L_2(h) = L(h),$$

which is obviously linear. The matrix of this transformation is the corresponding linear combination of the matrices of the transformations L_1 and L_2 .

The composition $C = B \circ A$ of linear transformations $A : \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ and $B : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^k$ is obviously also a linear transformation, whose matrix, as follows from, is the product of the matrix of A and the matrix of B (which is multiplied on the left). Actually, the law of multiplication for matrices was defined in the way you are familiar with precisely so that the product of matrices would correspond to the composition of the transformations.

3.4 THE NORM IN \mathbb{R}^m

The quantity

$$\|x\| = \sqrt{(x_1)^2 + \dots + (x_m)^2}$$

is known the norm of the vector $x = (x_1, \dots, x_m) \in \mathbb{R}^m$.

It follows from this definition, taking account of Minkowski's inequality, that

$$1^\circ \quad \|x\| > 0,$$

$$2^\circ \quad (\|x\| = 0) \Leftrightarrow (x = 0),$$

$$3^\circ \quad \|Ax\| = |A| \cdot \|x\|, \text{ where } A \in \mathbb{R}^m,$$

$$4^\circ \quad \|x_1 + x_2\| \leq \|x_1\| + \|x_2\|.$$

In general, any function $\|\cdot\| : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ on a vector space X satisfying conditions 1^o-4^o is known a norm on the vector space. Sometimes, to be precise as to which norm is being discussed, the norm sign has a symbol attached to it to denote the space in which it is being considered. For example, we can write $\|\cdot\|_{\mathbb{R}^m}$ or $\|\cdot\|_m$. As a rule, however, we shall not do that, since it will always be clear from the context which space and which norm are meant.

Notes

We remark that

$$\|x - x_2\| = d(x, x_2)$$

where $d(x_1, x_2)$ is the distance in \mathbb{R}^m between the vectors x_1 and x_2 , regarded as points of \mathbb{R}^m .

It is clear from that the following conditions are equivalent:

$$x \rightarrow x_0, d(x, x_0) \rightarrow 0, \|x - x_0\| \rightarrow 0.$$

In view we have, in particular,

$$\|x\| = d(0, x).$$

Property 4° of a norm is known the triangle inequality, and it is now clear why.

The triangle inequality extends by induction to the sum of any finite number of terms. To be specific, the following inequality holds:

$$\|x_1 + \dots + x_n\| \leq \|x_1\| + \dots + \|x_n\|.$$

The presence of the norm of a vector enables us to compare the size of values of functions $f: X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$ and $g: X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$.

Let us agree to write $f(x) = o(g(x))$ or $f = o(g)$ over a base B in X if

$$\|f(x)\|_{\mathbb{R}^m} =$$

$$o(\|g(x)\|_{\mathbb{R}^n}) \text{ over the base } B.$$

If $f(x) = (f_1(x), \dots, f_m(x))$ is the coordinate representation of the mapping $f: X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$, then in view of the inequalities

$$m$$

$$\|f(x)\| \leq \sqrt{f_1^2(x) + \dots + f_m^2(x)}$$

$$\geq \max_{i=1, \dots, m} |f_i(x)|$$

one can make the following observation, which will be useful below:

$$f = o(g) \text{ over the base } B \iff \{g_i\} \text{ over the base } B \text{ for } i=1, \dots, m.$$

We also make the convention that the statement $f=0$ over the base B in X will mean that $\|f(x)\|_{R^m} = 0$ ($\|f(x)\|_{R^n}$) over the base B .

We then obtain from

$(f=0 \text{ over the base } B) \Leftrightarrow (f_i=0 \text{ over the base } B \ \forall i=1, \dots, m)$.

Example. Consider a linear transformation $L : R^m \rightarrow R^n$. Let h

be an arbitrary vector in R^m . Let us estimate $\|L(h)\|_{R^n}$:

$m \quad m$

$\|L(h)\|_{R^n} = \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^n (L_i(h))^2}$

$\leq \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=1}^m |L_{ij}|^2} \|h\|_{R^m}$

Thus one can assert that

$\|L(h)\|_{R^n} \leq \|L\| \|h\|_{R^m}$.

In particular,

it

follows from this that $\|L(x) - L(x_0)\|_{R^n} \rightarrow 0$

as $x \rightarrow x_0$, that is, a linear transformation $L : R^m \rightarrow R^n$ is

continuous at every point $x \in R^m$. From estimate it is even clear that a

linear transformation is uniformly continuous.

3.5 THE EUCLIDEAN STRUCTURE ON R^m

The concept of the inner product in a real vector space is known from algebra as a numerical function (x, y) defined on pairs of vectors of the space and possessing the properties

$$(x, x) \geq 0,$$

$$(x, x) = 0 \Leftrightarrow x = 0,$$

$$(x, y) = (y, x),$$

$$(Ax, y) = (x, Ay), \text{ where } A \in R,$$

Notes

$$(x_1 + x_2, x_3) = (x_1, x_3) + (x_2, x_3).$$

It follows in particular from these properties that if a basis $\{ e_1, \dots, e_m \}$ is fixed in the space, then the inner product (x, y) of two vectors x and y can be expressed in terms of their coordinates (x_1, \dots, x_m) and (y_1, \dots, y_m) as the bilinear form

$$(x, y) = \sum_{i,j} g_{ij} x_i y_j$$

(where summation over i and j is understood), in which $g_{ij} = (e^i, e^j)$.

Vectors are said to be orthogonal if their inner product equals 0.

A basis $\{ e_1, \dots, e_m \}$ is orthonormal if $g_{ij} = \delta_{ij}$, where

$$\delta_{ij} = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } i = j, \\ 0, & \text{if } i \neq j, \end{cases}$$

$$\delta_{ij} = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } i = j, \\ 0, & \text{if } i \neq j. \end{cases}$$

In an orthonormal basis the inner product has the very simple form

$$(x, y) = \sum_{i=1}^m x_i y_i,$$

or

$$(x, y) = x^1 \cdot y^1 + \dots + x^m \cdot y^m.$$

Coordinates in which the inner product has this form are known as Cartesian coordinates.

We recall that the space \mathbb{R}^m with an inner product defined in it is known as Euclidean space.

Between the inner product and the norm of a vector there is an obvious connection

$$(x, x) = \|x\|^2.$$

The following inequality is known from algebra:

$$\|x\| \|y\| \geq |(x, y)|.$$

It shows in particular that for any pair of vectors there is an angle $\theta \in [0, \pi]$ such that

$$(x, y) = \|x\| \|y\| \cos \theta.$$

This angle is known as the angle between the vectors x and y . That is the reason we regard vectors whose inner product is zero as orthogonal.

We shall also find useful the following simple, but very important fact, known from algebra:

any linear function $L: \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ in Euclidean space has the form

$$L(x) = \langle L, x \rangle,$$

where $L \in \mathbb{R}^m$ is a fixed vector determined uniquely by the function L .

3.6 THE DIFFERENTIAL OF A FUNCTION OF SEVERAL VARIABLES

Differentiability and the Differential of a Function at a Point

Definition. A function $f: E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ defined on a set $E \subset \mathbb{R}^m$ is differentiable at the point $x \in E$, which is a limit point of E , if

$$f(x+h) - f(x) = L(h) + o(\|h\|),$$

where $L: \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ is a function that is linear in h and $o(\|h\|) = o(\|h\|)$ as $\|h\| \rightarrow 0$, $x+h \in E$.

The vectors

$$\Delta x(h) := (x+h) - x = h,$$

$$\Delta f(x; h) := f(x+h) - f(x)$$

are known respectively as the increment of the argument and the increment of the function (corresponding to this increment of the argument). These vectors are traditionally denoted by the symbols Δx and $\Delta f(x)$ themselves Δx and $\Delta f(x)$. The linear function $L(x): \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ is

Notes

known the differential, tangent mapping, or derivative mapping of the function $f: E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ at the point $x \in E$.

The differential of the function $f: E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ at a point $x \in E$ is denoted by the symbols $df(x)$, $Df(x)$, or $f'(x)$.

In accordance with the notation just introduced, we can rewrite relation as

$$f(x+h) - f(x) = f'(x)h + a(x; h)$$

or

$$df(x; h) = df(x)h + a(x; h).$$

We remark that the differential is defined on the displacements h from the point $x \in \mathbb{R}^m$.

To emphasize this, we attach a copy of the vector space \mathbb{R}^m to the point $x \in \mathbb{R}^m$ and denote it $T_x\mathbb{R}^m$, $T\mathbb{R}^m(x)$, or $T\mathbb{R}^m$. The space $T\mathbb{R}^m$ can be interpreted as a set of vectors attached at the point $x \in \mathbb{R}^m$. The vector space $T\mathbb{R}^m$ is known the tangent space to \mathbb{R}^m at $x \in \mathbb{R}^m$. The origin of this terminology will be explained below.

The value of the differential on a vector $h \in T\mathbb{R}^m$ is the vector $f'(x)h \in T\mathbb{R}^m$ attached to the point $f(x)$ and approximating the increment $f(x+h) - f(x)$ of the function caused by the increment h of the argument x .

Thus $df(x)$ or $f'(x)$ is a linear transformation $f'(x): T\mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow T\mathbb{R}^m$.

We observe that, in complete agreement with the one-dimensional case that

we studied, a vector-valued function of several variables is differentiable at a point if its increment $df(x; h)$ at that point is linear as a function of h up to the correction term $a(x; h)$, which is infinitesimal as $h \rightarrow 0$ compared to the increment of the argument.

3.7 THE DIFFERENTIAL AND PARTIAL DERIVATIVES OF A REAL-VALUED FUNCTION

If the vectors $f(x+h)$, $f(x)$, $L(x)h$, and $a\{x\}h$ in \mathbb{R}^n are written in coordinates becomes equivalent to the n equalities

$f(x+h) - f(x) = L(x)h + o(\|h\|)$ between real-valued functions, in which, as follows from relations, $L_i(x): \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ are linear functions and $a\{x\}h = o(\|h\|)$ as $h \rightarrow 0$, $x+h \in E$, for every $i=1, \dots, n$.

Thus we have the following proposition.

Proposition. A mapping $f: E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ of a set $E \subset \mathbb{R}^m$ is differentiable at a point $x \in E$ that is a limit point of E if and only if the functions $f_i: E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$

($i=1, \dots, n$) that define the coordinate representation of the mapping are differentiable at that point.

Since relations are equivalent, to find the differential

$L(x)$ of a mapping $f: E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ it suffices to learn how to find the differentials $L_i(x)$ of its coordinate functions $f_i: E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$.

Thus, Let us consider a real-valued function $f: E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, defined on a set $E \subset \mathbb{R}^m$ and differentiable at an interior point $x \in E$ of that set. We remark that in the future we shall mostly be dealing with the case when E is a domain in \mathbb{R}^m . If x is an interior point of E , then for any sufficiently small displacement h from x the point $x+h$ will also belong to E , and consequently will also be in the domain of definition of the function $f: E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$.

If we pass to the coordinate notation for the point $x = (x_1, \dots, x_m)$, the vector $h = (h_1, \dots, h_m)$, and the linear function $L(x)h = a\{x\}h = f'_1(x)h_1 + \dots + f'_m(x)h_m$, then the condition

$$f(x+h) - f(x) = L(x)h + o(\|h\|) \text{ as } h \rightarrow 0$$

can be rewritten as

$$f(x_1+h_1, \dots, x_m+h_m) - f(x_1, \dots, x_m) = f'_1(x)h_1 + \dots + f'_m(x)h_m + o(\|h\|) \text{ as } h \rightarrow 0$$

Notes

where $a_i(x), \dots, a_m(x)$ are real numbers connected with the point x .

We wish to find these numbers. To do this, instead of an arbitrary displacement ft we consider the special displacement

$$h = \sum_{i=1}^m e_i \cdot \epsilon_i = \sum_{i=1}^m e_i \cdot \epsilon_i$$

by a vector ft^* collinear with the vector of the basis $\{e_1, \dots, e_m\}$ in R^m .

When $ft = ft^*$, it is obvious that $\|ft\| = \|ft^*\|$, and so by (8.24), for $ft = h$ we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} f(x_1, \dots, x_i + h_i, \dots, x_m) - f(x_1, \dots, x_i, \dots, x_m) \\ = \sum_{i=1}^m \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_i}(x) h_i + o(\|h\|) \end{aligned}$$

This means that if we fix all the variables in the function $f(x_1, \dots, x_m)$ except the z th one, the resulting function of the z th variable alone is differentiable at the point x^0 .

In that way, we find that

$$\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x_1, \dots, x_i + h, \dots, x_m) - f(x_1, \dots, x_i, \dots, x_m)}{h} = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_i}(x)$$

$h \rightarrow 0$

Definition. The limit is known the partial derivative of the function $f(x)$ at the point $x = (x_1, \dots, x_m)$ with respect to the variable x_i . We denote it by one of the following symbols:

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x_i}(x), D_{x_i} f(x), f'_{x_i}(x)$$

3.8 COORDINATE REPRESENTATION OF THE DIFFERENTIAL OF A MAPPING. THE JACOBI MATRIX

Thus we have found formula for the differential of a real-valued function $f: E \rightarrow R$. But then, by the equivalence of relations for any mapping $f: E \rightarrow R^n$ of a set $E \subset R^m$ that is differentiable at an interior point $x \in E$, we can write the coordinate representation of the differential

$$df(x) = \left(\frac{\partial f_1}{\partial x_1}, \dots, \frac{\partial f_1}{\partial x_m}, \dots, \frac{\partial f_n}{\partial x_1}, \dots, \frac{\partial f_n}{\partial x_m} \right) dx$$

Definition. The matrix $(d_i f_j(x))_{(i=1, \dots, m, j=1, \dots, n)}$ of partial derivatives of the coordinate functions of a given mapping at the point $x \in E$ is known the Jacobi matrix³ or the Jacobian⁴ of the mapping at the point. In the case when $n=1$, we are simply brought back to formula and when $n=1$ and $m=1$, we arrive at the differential of a real-valued function of one real variable. The equivalence of relations and the uniqueness of the differential of a real-valued function implies the following result.

Proposition . If a mapping $f : E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ of a set $E \subset \mathbb{R}^m$ is differentiable at an interior point $x \in E$, then it has a unique differential $df(x)$ at that point, and the coordinate representation of the mapping $df(x) : \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ is given by relation.

3.9 CONTINUITY, PARTIAL DERIVATIVES, AND DIFFERENTIABILITY OF A FUNCTION AT A POINT

We complete our discussion of the concept of differentiability of a function at a point by pointing out some connections among the continuity of a function at a

point, the existence of partial derivatives of the function at that point, and differentiability at the point.

we established that if $L : \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ is a linear transformation, then $Lh \rightarrow 0$ as $ft \rightarrow 0$. Therefore, one can conclude from relation that a function that is differentiable at a point is continuous at that point, since

$$f(x+h) - f(x) = L(x)h + o(ft) \rightarrow 0, \quad x+h \in E.$$

The converse, of course, is not true because, as we know, it fails even in the one-dimensional case.

Notes

. Thus the relation between continuity and differentiability of a function at a point in the multidimensional case is the same as in the one-dimensional case.

The situation is completely different in regard to the relations between partial derivatives and the differential. In the one-dimensional case, that is, in the case of a real-valued function of one real variable, the existence of the differential and the existence of the derivative for a function at a point are equivalent conditions. For functions of several variables, we have shown that differentiability of a function at an interior point of its domain of definition guarantees the existence of a partial derivative with respect to each variable at that point. However, the converse is not true.

Example. The function

$$f(x^1, x^2) = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{if } x^1 x^2 = 0, \\ 1, & \text{if } x^1 x^2 \neq 0, \end{cases}$$

equals 0 on the coordinate axes and therefore has both partial derivatives at the point $(0, 0)$:

$$f_{x^1}(0, 0) = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(0, 0) - f(-h, 0)}{h} = 0,$$

$$f_{x^2}(0, 0) = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(0, 0) - f(0, -h)}{h} = 0.$$

$$f_{x^1}^2(0, 0) = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f_{x^1}(0, 0) - f_{x^1}(-h, 0)}{h} = 0,$$

At the same time, this function is not differentiable at $(0, 0)$, since it is obviously discontinuous at that point.

The function given in fails to have one of its partial derivatives at points of the coordinate axes different from $(0, 0)$. However, the function $f(x, y) =$

has partial derivatives at all points of the plane, but it also is discontinuous at the origin and hence not differentiable there.

Thus the possibility of writing the right-hand side still does not guarantee that this expression will represent the differential of the function we are considering, since the function can be non-differentiable.

This circumstance might have been a serious hindrance to the entire differential calculus of functions of several variables, if it had not been determined (as will be proved below) that continuity of the partial derivatives at a point is a sufficient condition for differentiability of the function at that point.

3.10 THE BASIC LAWS OF DIFFERENTIATION

LINEARITY OF THE OPERATION OF DIFFERENTIATION

Theorem If the mappings $f_1, f_2 : E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$, defined on a

set $E \subset \mathbb{R}^m$, are differentiable at a point $x \in E$, then a linear combination of them $(\alpha_1 f_1 + \alpha_2 f_2) : E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ is also differentiable at that point, and the following equality holds:

$$(\alpha_1 f_1 + \alpha_2 f_2)'(x) = (\alpha_1 f_1' + \alpha_2 f_2')(x).$$

Equality shows that the operation of differentiation, that is, forming the differential of a mapping at a point, is a linear transformation on the vector space of mappings $f : E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ that are differentiable at a given point of the set E .

The left-hand side of (1) contains by definition the linear transformation $(\alpha_1 f_1' + \alpha_2 f_2')(x)$, while the right-hand side contains the linear combination $(\alpha_1 f_1 + \alpha_2 f_2)'(x)$ of linear transformations $f_1'(x) : \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$, and $f_2'(x) : \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$, which, as we know from Sect. 8.1, is also a linear transformation.

Notes

Theorem asserts that these mappings are the same.

Proof

$$\begin{aligned}
 & (A_1 f_1 + A_2 f_2)(x+h) - (A_1 f_1 + A_2 f_2)(x) = \\
 &= (A_1 f_1(x+h) + A_2 f_2(x+h)) - (A_1 f_1(x) + A_2 f_2(x)) = \\
 &= A_1(f_1(x+h) - f_1(x)) + A_2(f_2(x+h) - f_2(x)) = \\
 &= A_1(f_1'(x)h + o(h)) + A_2(f_2'(x)h + o(h)) = \\
 &= (A_1 f_1'(x) + A_2 f_2'(x))h + o(h). \quad \square
 \end{aligned}$$

If the functions in question are real-valued, the operations of multiplication and division (when the denominator is not zero) can also be performed.

We have then the following theorem.

Theorem: If the functions $f : E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ and $g : E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, defined on a set $E \subset \mathbb{R}^m$, are differentiable at the point $x \in E$, then

a) their product is differentiable at x and

$$(fg)'(x) = g(x)f'(x) + f(x)g'(x);$$

b) their quotient is differentiable at x if $g(x) \neq 0$, and

$$\left(\frac{f}{g}\right)'(x) = \frac{g(x)f'(x) - f(x)g'(x)}{g(x)^2}.$$

The proof of this theorem is the same as the proof of the corresponding parts of Theorem, so that we shall omit the details.

Relations can be rewritten in the other notations for the differential. To be specific:

$$d(A_1 f_1 + A_2 f_2)(x) = (A_1 df_1 + A_2 df_2)(x),$$

$$d(fg)(x) = g(x)df(x) + f(x)dg(x),$$

$$d\left(\frac{f}{g}\right)(x) = \frac{g(x)df(x) - f(x)dg(x)}{g(x)^2}.$$

Let us observe what these equalities mean in the coordinate representation of the mappings. We know that if a mapping $f : E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ that is differentiable at an interior point x of the set $E \subset \mathbb{R}^m$ is written in the coordinate form

$\langle p(x) =$

then the Jacobi matrix

$$v'(x) = (f''''(x)) = (a, vJ)(x)$$

will correspond to its differential $d\langle^{\wedge}(x): \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ at this point.

For fixed bases in \mathbb{R}^m and \mathbb{R}^n the correspondence between linear transformations $L: \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ and $m \times n$ matrices is one-to-one, and hence the linear transformation L can be identified with the matrix that defines it.

Even so, we shall as a rule use the symbol $f'(x)$ rather than $d/(x)$ to denote the Jacobi matrix, since it corresponds better to the traditional distinction between the concepts of derivative and differential that holds in the one-dimensional case.

Thus, by the uniqueness of the differential, at an interior point x of E we obtain the following coordinate notation for denoting the equality of the corresponding Jacobi matrices:

$$\langle \partial_i (A_i / i + M f_i) \rangle (x) = \langle A_i \partial_i / i + A \cdot 2 \text{difi} \rangle (x)$$

$$(i = 1, \dots, m, \quad j = 1, \dots, n),$$

$$(d(f \cdot g))(x) = g(x)df(x) + f(x)dg(x) =$$

$$= \langle \partial_i f \rangle (x) \cdot g(x) + f(x) \cdot \langle \partial_i g \rangle (x) \quad (i = 1, \dots, m).$$

It follows from the elementwise equality of these matrices, for example, that the partial derivative with respect to the variable x^1 of the product of real-valued functions $f(x^1, \dots, x^m)$ and $g(x^1, \dots, x^m)$ should be taken as follows:

$$d^1 (f \cdot g)(x) =$$

$$dx^1 \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x^1} (f \cdot g) \right) =$$

$$f(x^1, \dots, x^m) \frac{\partial g}{\partial x^1}(x) + g(x^1, \dots, x^m) \frac{\partial f}{\partial x^1}(x).$$

We note that both this equality and the matrix equalities are obvious consequences of the definition of a partial derivative

Notes

and the usual rules for differentiating real-valued functions of one real variable. However, we know that the existence of partial derivatives can still turn out to be insufficient for a function of several variables to be differentiated. For that reason, along with the important and completely obvious equalities, the assertions about the existence of a differential for the corresponding mapping in Theorems acquire a particular importance.

We remark finally that by induction using one can obtain the relation

$$d(f_1 \cdots f_k)(x) = \sum_{i=1}^k (f_1 \cdots f_{i-1} f_{i+1} \cdots f_k)(x) df_i(x) + \dots$$

for the differential of a product of differentiated real-valued functions.

3.11 DIFFERENTIATION OF A COMPOSITION OF MAPPINGS (CHAIN RULE)

THE MAIN THEOREM

Theorem. If the mapping $f: X \rightarrow Y$ of a set $X \subset \mathbb{R}^m$ into a set $Y \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ is differentiable at a point $x \in X$, and the mapping $g: Y \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^k$ is differentiable at the point $y=f(x) \in Y$, then their composition $g \circ f: X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^k$ is differentiable at x and the differential $d(g \circ f): \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^k$ of the composition equals the composition $dg(y) \circ df(x)$ of the differentials $df(x): \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$, $dg(y): \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^k$.

The proof of this theorem repeats almost completely the proof of Theorem In order to call attention to a new detail that arises in this case, we shall nevertheless carry out the proof again, without going into technical details that have already been discussed, however.

Proof. Using the differentiability of the mappings f and g at the points x and $y=f(x)$, and also the linearity of the differential $g'(y)$, we can write

$$(g \circ f)(x+h) - (g \circ f)(x) = g(f(x+h)) - g(f(x)) =$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= g'(f(x))(f(x+h) - f(x)) + o(f(x+h) - f(x)) = \\
&= g'(y)(f'(x)h + o(h)) + o(f(x+h) - f(x)) = \\
&= g'(y)(f'(x)h) + g'(y)(o(h)) + o(f(x+h) - f(x)) = \\
&= (g'(y) \circ f'(x))h + a(x; h),
\end{aligned}$$

where $g'(y) \circ f'(x)$ is a linear mapping (being a composition of linear mappings), and

$$a(x; h) = g'(y)(o(h)) + o(f(x+h) - f(x)).$$

$$g'(y)(o(h)) = o(h) \text{ as } h \rightarrow 0,$$

$$f(x+h) - f(x) = f'(x)h + o(h) = 0(h) + o(h) = 0(h) \text{ as } h \rightarrow 0,$$

and

$$o(f(x+h) - f(x)) = o(0(h)) = o(h) \text{ as } h \rightarrow 0.$$

Consequently,

$$a(x; h) = o(h) + o(h) = o(h) \text{ as } h \rightarrow 0,$$

and the theorem is proved. \square

When rewritten in coordinate form, Theorem means that if x is an interior point of the set X and

$$\{df^1(x), \dots, df^n(x)\}$$

$$= \{df^j(x)\},$$

$$\{df^1(x), \dots, df^n(x)\}$$

and $y = f(x)$ is an interior point of the set Y and

$$\{dg^1(y), \dots, dg^n(y)\}$$

$$= \{dg^k(y)\},$$

$$\{dg^1(y), \dots, dg^n(y)\} = \{dg^k(y)\} /$$

In the equality

$$\{dg^1 \circ f\}(x) = dg^1\{f(x)\} \cdot df^1(x)$$

summation is understood on the right-hand side with respect to the index j over its interval of variation, that is, from 1 to n even in the sense of

elementwise equality of the matrices occurring in it.

Let us now consider some important cases of the theorem just proved.

3.12 THE DIFFERENTIAL AND PARTIAL DERIVATIVES OF A COMPOSITE REAL VALUED FUNCTION

Let $z=g(y^1, \dots, y^n)$ be a real-valued function of the real variables y^1, \dots, y^n , each of which in turn is a function $y^j = y^j(x^1, \dots, x^m)$ ($j=1, \dots, n$) of the variables x^1, \dots, x^m . Assuming that the functions g and y^j are differentiable ($j=1, \dots, n$), Let us find the partial derivative $\frac{\partial}{\partial x^i} (g \circ f)(x)$ of the composition of the mappings $f: X \rightarrow Y$ and $g: Y \rightarrow R$.

According to formula, in which $I=1$ under the present conditions, we find

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x^i} (g \circ f)(x) = \sum_{j=1}^n \frac{\partial g}{\partial y^j}(f(x)) \cdot \frac{\partial y^j}{\partial x^i}(x),$$

or, in notation that shows more detail $\frac{\partial}{\partial x^i} (g \circ f)(x) = \sum_{j=1}^n \frac{\partial g}{\partial y^j}(f(x)) \cdot \frac{\partial y^j}{\partial x^i}(x)$.

The Derivative with Respect to a Vector and the Gradient of a Function at a Point Consider the stationary flow of a liquid or gas in some domain G of R^3 . The term "stationary" means that the velocity of the flow at each point of G does not vary with time, although of course it can vary from one point of G to another. Suppose, for example, $p(x) = p(x^1, x^2, x^3)$ is the pressure in the flow at the point $x = (x^1, x^2, x^3) \in G$. If we move about in the flow according to the law $x = x(t)$, where t is time, we shall record a pressure $p(x(t)) = f(t)$ at time t . The rate of variation of pressure over time along our trajectory is obviously the derivative of function $f(t) = p(x(t))$ with respect to time. Let us find this derivative, assuming that $p(x^1, x^2, x^3)$ is a differentiable function in the domain G . By the rule for differentiating composite functions, we find

$$\frac{df}{dt}(t) = \sum_{i=1}^3 \frac{\partial p}{\partial x^i}(x(t)) \cdot \frac{dx^i}{dt}(t) \quad (8-36)$$

where $x^i(t) = x^i(t)$ ($i=1, 2, 3$).

Since the vector $(x^1, x^2, x^3) = v(t)$ is the velocity of our displacement at time t and $(df, d^2f, d^3f)(x)$ is the coordinate notation for the differential $d f(x)$ of the function f at the point x , can also be rewritten as that is, the required quantity is the value of the differential $d f(x(t))$ of the function $f(x)$ at the point $x(t)$ evaluated at the velocity vector $v(t)$ of the motion.

In particular, if we were at the point $x_0 = x(0)$ at time $t=0$, then

$$d f(x_0) = df(x_0)v,$$

where $v = v(t=0)$ is the velocity vector at time $t=0$.

The right-hand side depends only on the point $x_0 \in G$ and the velocity vector v that we have at that point; it is independent of the specific form of the trajectory $x = x(t)$, provided the condition $x(0) = x_0$ holds. That means that the value of the left-hand side is the same on any trajectory of the form

$$x(t) = x_0 + vt + \frac{1}{2}at^2,$$

where $a(t) = a$ as $t \rightarrow 0$, since this value is completely determined by giving the point x_0 and the vector $v \in \mathbb{R}^3$ attached at that point. In particular, if we wished to compute the value of the left-hand side of directly (and hence also the right-hand side), we could choose the law of motion to be

$$x(t) = x_0 + vt,$$

corresponding to a uniform motion at velocity v under which we are at the point $x(0) = x_0$ at time $t=0$.

We now give the following

Definition. If the function $f(x)$ is defined in a neighborhood of the point $x_0 \in \mathbb{R}^m$ and the vector $v \in \mathbb{R}^m$ is attached at the point x_0 , then the quantity

$$f(x_0 + vt) - f(x_0)$$

Notes

$$D_v f(x_0) := \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x_0 + hv) - f(x_0)}{h}$$

(if the indicated limit exists) is known the derivative of f at the point x_0 with respect to the vector v or the derivative along the vector v at the point x_0 .

It follows from these considerations that if the function f is differentiable at the point x_0 , then the following equality holds for any function $x(t)$ of the form in particular, for any function of the form

$$D_v f(x_0) = \langle \nabla f(x_0), v \rangle.$$

In coordinate notation, this equality says

$$D_v f(x_0) = \sum_{i=1}^m v_i \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_i}(x_0).$$

In particular, for the basis vectors $e_1 = (1, 0, \dots, 0), \dots, e_m = (0, \dots, 0, 1)$ this formula implies

$$D_{e_i} f(x_0) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_i}(x_0) \quad (i=1, \dots, m).$$

By virtue of the linearity of the differential $df(x_0)$, we deduce from that if f is differentiable at the point x_0 , then for any vectors $v \pm w$, $v, w \in \mathbb{R}^m$ and any $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{R}$ the function has a derivative at the point x_0 with respect to the vector $(\alpha v + \beta w) \in \mathbb{R}^m$, and that

$$D_{\alpha v + \beta w} f(x_0) = \alpha D_v f(x_0) + \beta D_w f(x_0).$$

If \mathbb{R}^m is regarded as a Euclidean space, that is, as a vector space with an inner product, then it is possible to write any linear functional $L(v)$ as the inner product $\langle \xi, v \rangle$ of a fixed vector $\xi = \xi(L)$ and the variable vector v .

In particular, there exists a vector ξ such that

$$df(x_0)v = \langle \xi, v \rangle.$$

Definition. The vector $\xi \in \mathbb{R}^m$ corresponding to the differential $df(x_0)$ of the function f at the point x_0 in the sense is known the gradient of the function at that point and is denoted $\text{grad } f(x_0)$.

Thus, by definition

$$df(x_0)v = (\text{grad } f(x_0), v).$$

If a Cartesian coordinate system has been chosen in \mathbb{R}^m , then, by comparing relations we conclude that the gradient has the following representation in such a coordinate system:

We shall now explain the geometric meaning of the vector $\text{grad } f(x_0)$.

Let $e \in T\mathbb{R}^m_{x_0}$ be a unit vector. Then

$$D_e f(x_0) = |\text{grad } f(x_0)| \cos \theta,$$

where θ is the angle between the vectors e and $\text{grad } f(x_0)$.

Thus if $\text{grad } f(x_0) \neq 0$ and $e = \frac{1}{\|\text{grad } f(x_0)\|} \text{grad } f(x_0)$, the derivative $D_e f(x_0)$ takes a maximum value. That is, the rate of increase of the function f (expressed in the units of f relative to a unit length in \mathbb{R}^m) is maximal

and equal to $\|\text{grad } f(x_0)\|$ for motion from the point X_0 precisely when the

displacement is in the direction of the vector $\text{grad } f(x_0)$. The value of the function decreases most sharply under displacement in the opposite direction,

and the rate of variation of the function is zero in a direction perpendicular

to the vector $\text{grad } f(x_0)$.

The derivative with respect to a unit vector in a given direction is usually

known the directional derivative in that direction.

Since a unit vector in Euclidean space is determined by its direction cosines

$$e = (\cos \alpha_1, \cos \alpha_2, \dots, \cos \alpha_m),$$

where α_i is the angle between the vector e and the basis vector e_i^* in a Cartesian coordinate system, it follows that

$$D_e f(x_0) = (\text{grad } f(x_0), e) = \sum_{i=1}^m (\text{grad } f(x_0))_i \cos \alpha_i.$$

Notes

The vector grad $f(x_0)$ is encountered very frequently and has numerous applications. For example the so-known gradient methods for finding extrema of functions of several variables numerically (using a computer) are based on the geometric property of the gradient just noted.

Many important vector fields, such as, for example, a Newtonian gravitational field or the electric field due to charge, are the gradients of certain scalar-valued functions, known as the potentials of the fields

Many physical laws use the vector grad /in their very statement. For example, in the mechanics of continuous media the equivalent of Newton's basic law of dynamics $ma=F$ is the relation

$$pa = -\text{grad } p,$$

which connects the acceleration $a=a(x, t)$ in the flow of an ideal liquid or gas free of external forces at the point x and time t with the density of the medium $p=p(x, t)$ and the gradient of the pressure $p=p(x, t)$ at the same point and time

We shall discuss the vector grad /again later, when we study vector analysis and the elements of field theory.

Check your Progress-1

Discuss Local Properties Of Continuous Functions

Discuss Functions of variable

3.13 LET US SUM UP

In this unit we have discussed the definition and example of Local Properties Of Continuous Functions, Linear Transformations $L : \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$, The Norm In \mathbb{R}^m , The Euclidean Structure On \mathbb{R}^m , The Differential Of A Function Of Several Variables, The Differential And Partial Derivatives Of A Real-Valued Function, Coordinate Representation Of The Differential Of A Mapping. The Jacobi Matrix, Continuity, Partial Derivatives And Differentiability Of A Function At A Point, The Basic Laws Of Differentiation Linearity Of The Operation Of Differentiation, Differentiation Of A Composition Of Mappings (Chain Rule) The Main Theorem, The Differential And Partial Derivatives Of A Composite Real Valued Function

3.14 KEYWORDS

1. Local Properties Of Continuous Functions: A mapping $f : E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ of a set $E \subset \mathbb{R}^m$ is continuous at a point $a \in E$ if and only if $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) = f(a)$.

2. Linear Transformations: $L : \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ We recall that a mapping $L : X \rightarrow Y$ from a vector space X into a vector space Y is known linear if

$$L(\alpha x_1 + \beta x_2) = \alpha L(x_1) + \beta L(x_2)$$

3. The Norm In \mathbb{R}^m The quantity $\|x\| = \sqrt{x_1^2 + \dots + x_m^2}$ is known the norm of the vector $x = (x_1, \dots, x_m) \in \mathbb{R}^m$.

4. The Euclidean Structure On \mathbb{R}^m : The concept of the inner product in a real vector space is known from algebra as a numerical function (x, y) defined on pairs of vectors of the space and possessing the properties

5. The Differential Of A Function Of Several Variables: Differentiability and the Differential of a Function at a Point

Notes

6. The Basic Laws Of Differentiation Linearity Of The Operation Of Differentiation Theorem If the mappings R^n and $/2 : E R^n$, defined on a set $E C R^m$, are differentiate at a point $x \leq E$

7. Differentiation Of A Composition Of Mappings (Chain Rule) The Main Theorem : If the mapping $f : X \rightarrow Y$ of a set $X C R^m$ into a set $Y C R^n$ is differentiate at a point $x G X$

8.The Differential And Partial Derivatives Of A Composite Real Valued Function Let $z=g(y^1, \dots, y^n)$ be a real-valued function of the real variables y^1, \dots, y^n , each of which in turn is a function

3.15 QUESTIONS FOR REVIEW

Explain Local Properties Of Continuous Functions

Explain Function of Variables

3.16 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

Local Properties Of Continuous Functions

(answer for Check your Progress-1 Q)

Function of Variables

3.17 REFERENCES

- Analysis of Several Variables
- Application of Several Variables
- System of Equation
- Function of Real Variables
- Real Several Variables
- Elementary Variables

UNIT - IV: DIFFERENTIAL CALCULUS OF REAL-VALUED FUNCTIONS OF SEVERAL VARIABLES

STRUCTURE

4.0 Objectives

4.1 Introduction

4.2 The Basic Facts Of Differential Calculus Of Real-Valued Functions
Of Several Variables...The Mean-Value Theorem

4.3 A Sufficient Condition For Differentiability Of A Function Of
Several Variables

4.4 Higher-Order Partial Derivatives

4.5 Real-Valued Functions Of Several Variables

4.6 Taylor's Formula

4.7 Extrema Of Functions Of Several Variables

4.8 The Implicit Function Theorem

4.9 Elementary Version Of The Implicit Function Theorem

4.10 Let Us Sum Up

4.11 Keywords

4.12 Questions For Review

4.13 Answers To Check Your Progress

4.14 References

4.0 OBJECTIVES

After studying this unit, you should be able to:

Notes

Learn, Understand about Facts Of Differential Calculus Of Real-Valued Functions Of Several Variables, The Mean-Value Theorem

Learn, Understand about A Sufficient Condition For Differentiability Of A Function Of Several Variables

Learn, Understand about Higher-Order Partial Derivatives

Learn, Understand about Real-Valued Functions Of Several Variables

Learn, Understand about Taylor's Formula

Learn, Understand about Extrema Of Functions Of Several Variables

Learn, Understand about The Implicit Function Theorem

Learn, Understand about Elementary Version Of The Implicit Function Theorem

4.1 INTRODUCTION

In mathematics advanced calculus whose aim is to provide a firm logical foundation of analysis of calculus and a course in linear algebra treats analysis in one variable & analysis in several variables

The Basic Facts Of Differential Calculus Of Real-Valued Functions Of Several Variables, The Mean-Value Theorem, A Sufficient Condition For Differentiability Of A Function Of Several Variables, Higher-Order Partial Derivatives, Real-Valued Functions Of Several Variables, Taylor's Formula, Extrema Of Functions Of Several Variables, The Implicit Function Theorem, Elementary Version Of The Implicit Function Theorem

4.2 THE BASIC FACTS OF DIFFERENTIAL CALCULUS OF REAL-VALUED FUNCTIONS OF SEVERAL VARIABLES

THE MEAN-VALUE THEOREM

Theorem. Let $f : G \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be a real-valued function defined in a region $G \subset \mathbb{R}^n$, and Let the closed line segment $[x, x + h]$ with endpoints x

and

$x + h$ be contained in G . If the function f is continuous at the points of the closed line segment $[x, x + h]$ and differentiable at points of the open interval $]x, x + h[$, then there exists a point $\xi \in]x, x + h[$ such that the following equality holds:

$$f(x + h) - f(x) = f'(\xi)h \quad \blacksquare$$

Proof Consider the auxiliary function

$$F(t) = f(x + th)$$

defined on the closed interval $0 < t < 1$. This function satisfies all the hypotheses of Lagrange's theorem: it is continuous on $[0, 1]$, being the composition of continuous mappings, and differentiable on the open interval $]0, 1[$,

being the composition of differentiable mappings. Consequently, there exists a point $\theta \in]0, 1[$ such that

$$F(1) - F(0) = F'(\theta) \cdot 1.$$

But $F(1) = f(x + h)$, $F(0) = f(x)$, $F'(\theta) = f'(x + \theta h)$, and hence the equality just written is the same as the assertion of the theorem.

We now give the coordinate form of relation.

If $x = (x_1, \dots, x_m)$, $h = (h_1, \dots, h_m)$, and $\xi = (x_1 + \theta h_1, \dots, x_m + \theta h_m)$,

means that $f(x + h) - f(x) = f(x_1 + h_1, \dots, x_m + h_m) - f(x_1, \dots, x_m) =$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^m \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_i}(\xi) h_i =$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^m \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_i}(x_1 + \theta h_1, \dots, x_m + \theta h_m) h_i.$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^m \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_i}(\xi) h_i.$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^m \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_i}(\xi) h_i.$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^m \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_i}(\xi) h_i.$$

Using the convention of summation on an index that appears as both superscript and subscript, we can finally write

$$f(x_1 + h_1, \dots, x_m + h_m) - f(x_1, \dots, x_m) =$$

Notes

$$= df(x)h + o(\|h\|), \quad (8.54)$$

where $0 < \epsilon < 1$ and ϵ depends on both x and f .

Remark. Theorem 8.5 is known as the mean-value theorem because there exists

a certain "average" point $\xi \in [x, x+h]$ at which holds. We have already noted in our discussion of Lagrange's theorem that the mean-value theorem is specific to real-valued functions. A

A general finite increment theorem for mappings will be proved.

Corollary. If the function $f : G \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is differentiable in the domain $G \subset \mathbb{R}^m$ and its differential equals zero at every point $x \in G$, then f is constant in the domain G .

Proof The vanishing of a linear transformation is equivalent to the vanishing of all the elements of the matrix corresponding to it. In the present case

$$df(x)h = (df_1(x)h, \dots, df_m(x)h),$$

and therefore $df(x)h = 0$ at every point $x \in G$.

By definition, a domain is an open connected set. We shall make use of this fact.

We first show that if $x \in G$, then the function f is constant in a ball $B(x; r) \subset G$. Indeed, if $(x+h) \in B(x; r)$, then $[x, x+h] \subset B(x; r) \subset G$.

Applying relation (8.5), we obtain

$$f(x+h) - f(x) = f'(\xi)h = 0 \cdot h = 0,$$

that is, $f(x+h) = f(x)$, and the values of f in the ball $B(x; r)$ are all equal to the value at the center of the ball.

Now let $x_0, x_1 \in G$ be arbitrary points of the domain G . By the connectedness of G , there exists a path $t \mapsto x(t) \in G$ such that $x(0) = x_0$ and $x(1) = x_1$. We let that the continuous mapping $t \mapsto x(t)$ is defined on the closed interval $0 < t < 1$. Let $B(x; r)$ be a ball with center at x_0 contained in G . Since $x(0) = x_0$ and the mapping $t \mapsto x(t)$ is continuous, there

is a positive number δ such that $x(t) \in B(x_0; r) \subset G$ for $0 < t < \delta$. Then, by what has been proved, $(f \circ x)(t) = f(x_0)$ on the interval $[0, \delta]$.

Let $I = \sup S$, where the upper bound is taken over all numbers $\delta \in [0, 1]$ such that $(f \circ x)(t) = f(x_0)$ on the interval $[0, \delta]$. By the continuity of the function $f(x)$ we have $f(x(I)) = f(x_0)$. But then $1 = 1$. Indeed, if that were not so, we could take a ball $B(x(I); r) \subset G$, in which $f(x) = f(x(I)) = f(x_0)$, and then by the continuity of the mapping $t \mapsto x(t)$ find $A > 0$ such that $x(t) \in B(x(I); r)$ for $I < t < I + A$. But then $(f \circ x)(t) = f(x(I)) = f(x_0)$ for $0 < t < I + A$, and so $I = \sup S$.

Thus we have shown that $(f \circ x)(t) = f(x_0)$ for any $t \in [0, 1]$. In particular $(f \circ x)(1) = f(x_1) = f(x_0)$, and we have verified that the values of the function $f: G \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ are the same at any two points $x_0, x_1 \in G$.

4.3 A SUFFICIENT CONDITION FOR DIFFERENTIABILITY OF A FUNCTION OF SEVERAL VARIABLES

Theorem. Let $f: U(x) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be a function defined in a neighborhood $U(x) \subset \mathbb{R}^m$ of the point $x = (x_1, \dots, x_m)$.

If the function f has all partial derivatives, \dots , at each point of the neighborhood $U(x)$ and they are continuous at x , then f is differentiable at x .

Proof Without loss of generality we shall let that $U(x)$ is a ball $B(x; r)$. Then, together with the points $x = (x_1, \dots, x_m)$ and $x + h = (x_1 + h_1, \dots, x_m + h_m)$, the points $(x_1 + h_1, \dots, x_2 + h_2, \dots, x_m + h_m)$, \dots , $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_{m-1}, x_m + h_m)$ and the lines connecting them must also belong to the domain $U(x)$. We shall use this fact, applying the Lagrange theorem for functions of one variable in the following computation:

$$\begin{aligned} f(x + h) - f(x) &= f(x_1 + h_1, \dots, x_m + h_m) - f(x_1, \dots, x_m) \\ &= f(x_1 + h_1, \dots, x_m + h_m) - f(x_1, x_2 + h_2, \dots, x_m + h_m) + \end{aligned}$$

Notes

$$\begin{aligned}
 &+ f_{i_1, i_2, \dots, i_m}(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_m) h_{i_1} h_{i_2} \dots h_{i_m} \\
 &+ f_{i_1, i_2, \dots, i_m}(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_m) h_{i_1} h_{i_2} \dots h_{i_m} \\
 &= \sum_{i_1, i_2, \dots, i_m} f_{i_1, i_2, \dots, i_m}(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_m) h_{i_1} h_{i_2} \dots h_{i_m} \\
 &+ \sum_{i_1, i_2, \dots, i_m} f_{i_1, i_2, \dots, i_m}(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_m) h_{i_1} h_{i_2} \dots h_{i_m} \\
 &+ \sum_{i_1, i_2, \dots, i_m} f_{i_1, i_2, \dots, i_m}(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_m) h_{i_1} h_{i_2} \dots h_{i_m}
 \end{aligned}$$

So far we have used only the fact that the function f has partial derivatives with respect to each of its variables in the domain $U(x)$. We now use the fact that these partial derivatives are continuous at x . Continuing the preceding computation, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
 f(x+h) - f(x) &= \sum_{i=1}^m \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_i}(x) h_i + a_1 h_1 + \\
 &+ \sum_{i=1}^m \sum_{j=1}^m \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x_i \partial x_j}(x) h_i h_j + \sum_{i=1}^m a_{i2} h_i^2 + \\
 &+ \sum_{i=1}^m \sum_{j=1}^m \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x_i \partial x_j}(x) h_i h_j + \sum_{i=1}^m a_{im} h_i^m,
 \end{aligned}$$

where the quantities a_1, \dots, a_m tend to zero as $h \rightarrow 0$ by virtue of the continuity of the partial derivatives at the point x .

But this means that

$$f(x+h) - f(x) = L(x)h + o(\|h\|) \text{ as } h \rightarrow 0,$$

where $L(x)h = \sum_{i=1}^m \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_i}(x) h_i$ and $h = (h_1, \dots, h_m)$.

It follows from Theorem that if the partial derivatives of a function $f: G \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ are continuous in the domain $G \subset \mathbb{R}^m$, then the function is differentiable at that point of the domain.

Let us agree from now on to use the symbol $C^k(G; \mathbb{R})$, or, more simply, $C^k(G)$ to denote the set of functions having continuous partial derivatives in the domain G .

4.4 HIGHER-ORDER PARTIAL DERIVATIVES

If a function $f: G \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ defined in a domain $G \subset \mathbb{R}^m$ has a partial derivative with respect to one of the variables x_1, \dots, x_m , this partial derivative

is a function $\text{d}f : G \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, which in turn can have a partial derivative $\text{d}^2 f(\text{d}f)(x)$ with respect to a variable x_k

The function $\text{d}^2 f(\text{d}f) : G \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is known the second partial derivative of f with respect to the variables x_i and is denoted by one of the following symbols:

$\text{d}^2 f$

$\text{d}^2 x_i \text{d} x_j$

The order of the indices indicates the order in which the differentiation is carried out with respect to the corresponding variables.

We have now defined partial derivatives of second order.

If a partial derivative of order k

$= \text{d}^k f(\text{d}^k x_i)$

has been defined, we define by induction the partial derivative of order $k + 1$

by the relation

$\text{d}^k f(\text{d}^k x_i) := \text{d}^k f(\text{d}^k x_i)$

At this point a question arises that is specific for functions of several variables: Does the order of differentiation affect the partial derivative computed?

4.5 REAL-VALUED FUNCTIONS OF SEVERAL VARIABLES

Theorem. If the function $f : G \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ has partial derivatives

$\text{d}^k f$

$\text{d}^k f(\text{d}^k x_i)$

Notes

in a domain G , then at every point $x \in G$ at which both partial derivatives are continuous, their values are the same.

Proof Let $x \in G$ be a point at which both functions $f, g : G \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ and $\frac{\partial f}{\partial x_i}, \frac{\partial g}{\partial x_i} : G \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ are continuous. From this point on all of our arguments are carried out in the context of a ball $B(x; r) \subset G$, $r > 0$, which is a convex neighborhood of the point x . We wish to verify that

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x_i} \left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial x_j} \right) = \frac{\partial}{\partial x_j} \left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial x_i} \right)$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x_i \partial x_j} = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x_j \partial x_i}$$

Since only the variables x^* and x^j will be changing in the computations to follow, we shall let for the sake of brevity that f is a function of two variables $f(x^1, x^2)$, and we need to verify that

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x^1} \left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial x^2} \right) = \frac{\partial}{\partial x^2} \left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial x^1} \right),$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^1 \partial x^2} = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2 \partial x^1}$$

if the two functions are both continuous at the point (x^1, x^2) .

Consider the auxiliary function

$$F(t_1, t_2) = f(x^1 + t_1, x^2 + t_2) - f(x^1 + t_1, x^2) - f(x^1, x^2 + t_2) + f(x^1, x^2),$$

where the displacement $t = (t_1, t_2)$ is let to be sufficiently small, namely so small that $x + t \in B(x; r)$.

If we regard $F(t_1, t_2)$ as the difference

$$F(h_1, h_2) = F(h_1, h_2) - F(0, 0),$$

where $y > (\leq) = f(x^1 + 2t_1, x^2 + t_2) - f(x^1 + 2t_1, x^2)$, we find by Lagrange's theorem that

$$F(t_1, t_2) = F(h_1, h_2) = \left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial x^1}(x^1 + \theta h_1, x^2 + t_2) - \frac{\partial f}{\partial x^1}(x^1 + \theta t_1, x^2) \right) h_1.$$

Again applying Lagrange's theorem to this last difference, we find that

$$F(h_1, h_2) = \left(\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^1 \partial x^2}(x^1 + \theta_1 h_1, x^2 + \theta_2 h_2) \right) h_1 h_2.$$

If we now represent $F(t_1, t_2)$ as the difference

$$F(h_1, h_2) = F(h_1, h_2) - F(0, 0),$$

where $\phi(t) = f(x_1 + th_1, x_2 + th_2) - f(x_1, x_2 + 2th_2)$, we find similarly that

$$F(h_1, h_2) = d^2 f(x_1 + 6h_1, x_2 + 6h_2) h_1 h_2.$$

Comparing we conclude that

$$0 = d^2 f(x_1 + 6h_1, x_2 + 6h_2) h_1 h_2 - d^2 f(x_1, x_2 + 6h_2) h_1 h_2,$$

where $6h_1, 6h_2 \in G$. Using the continuity of the partial derivatives at

the point (x_1, x_2) , as $h_1, h_2 \rightarrow 0$, we get the equality we need as a consequence of $d^2 f(x_1, x_2) = d^2 f(x_1, x_2)$. \square

We remark that without additional assumptions we cannot say in general that $d_{i_1} d_{i_2} f(x) = d_{i_2} d_{i_1} f(x)$ if both of the partial derivatives are defined at the point x (observe Problem 2 at the end of this section).

Let us agree to denote the set of functions $f: G \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ all of whose partial derivatives up to order k inclusive are defined and continuous in the domain $G \subset \mathbb{R}^m$ by the symbol $C^k(G; \mathbb{R})$ or $C^k(G)$.

Proposition. If $f \in C^k(G; \mathbb{R})$, the value $d_{i_1} \dots d_{i_k} f(x)$ of the partial derivative is independent of the order i_1, \dots, i_k of differentiation, that is, remains the same for any permutation of the indices i_1, \dots, i_k .

Proof. In the case $k=2$ this proposition is contained

Let us let that the proposition holds up to order n inclusive. We shall show that then it also holds for order $n+1$.

But $d_{i_1} d_{i_2} \dots d_{i_{n+1}} f(x) = d_{i_1} (d_{i_2} \dots d_{i_{n+1}} f(x))$. By the induction assumption the indices i_2, \dots, i_{n+1} can be permuted without changing the function $d_{i_2} \dots d_{i_{n+1}} f(x)$ and hence without changing $d_{i_1} d_{i_2} \dots d_{i_{n+1}} f(x)$. For that reason it suffices to verify that one can also permute, for example, the indices i_1 and i_2 without changing the value of the derivative $d_{i_1} d_{i_2} \dots d_{i_{n+1}} f(x)$.

Since

$$0 = d_{i_1} d_{i_2} \dots d_{i_{n+1}} f(x) - d_{i_2} d_{i_1} d_{i_3} \dots d_{i_{n+1}} f(x),$$

Notes

the possibility of this permutation follows immediately By the induction principle

Example. Let $f(x) = f(x_1, x_2)$ be a function of class $C^k(G; \mathbb{R})$.

Let $h = (h_1, h_2)$ be such that the closed interval $[x, x + h]$ is contained in the domain G . We shall show that the function

$$p(t) = f(x + th),$$

which is defined on the closed interval $[0, 1]$, belongs to class $C^k[0, 1]$ and find its derivative of order k with respect to t .

We have

$$\begin{aligned} p'(t) &= \frac{d}{dt} f(x_1 + th_1, x_2 + th_2) = h_1 \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_1}(x + th) + h_2 \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_2}(x + th) \\ p''(t) &= \frac{d^2}{dt^2} f(x + th) = h_1^2 \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x_1^2}(x + th) + 2h_1 h_2 \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x_1 \partial x_2}(x + th) \\ &\quad + h_2^2 \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x_2^2}(x + th) = \\ &= \sum_{i,j=1}^2 h_i h_j \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x_i \partial x_j}(x + th). \end{aligned}$$

These relations can be written as the action of the operator $(h \cdot \nabla + h^2 \cdot \nabla^2)$:

$$p'(t) = (h \cdot \nabla + h^2 \cdot \nabla^2) f(x + th) = h \cdot \nabla f(x + th),$$

$$p''(t) = (h \cdot \nabla + h^2 \cdot \nabla^2)^2 f(x + th) = h \cdot \nabla (h \cdot \nabla f(x + th)).$$

By induction we obtain

$$p^{(k)}(t) = (h \cdot \nabla + h^2 \cdot \nabla^2)^k f(x + th) = h \cdot \nabla (h \cdot \nabla)^{k-1} f(x + th)$$

(summation over all sets i_1, \dots, i_{k-1} of $k-1$ indices, each assuming the values 1 and 2, is meant).

Example. If $f(x) = f(x_1, \dots, x_n) \in C^k(G; \mathbb{R})$ and $G \subset \mathbb{R}^n$, then, under the assumption that $[x, x + h] \subset G$, for the function $p(t) = f(x + th)$ defined on the closed interval $[0, 1]$ we obtain

$$p^{(k)}(t) = h \cdot \nabla (h \cdot \nabla)^{k-1} f(x + th),$$

where summation over all sets of indices z^i, \dots , each assuming all values from 1 to m inclusive, is meant on the right.

We can also write formula as

$$= \{ rtdi + \dots + hmdm \} kf(x + th)$$

4.6 TAYLOR'S FORMULA

Theorem: If the function $f : U(x) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is defined and belongs to class $C^{(n)}(C^k(s); \mathbb{R})$ in a neighborhood $U(x) \subset \mathbb{R}^m$ of the point $x \in \mathbb{R}^m$, and the closed interval $[x, x + h]$ is completely contained in $U(x)$, then the following equality holds:

$$\begin{aligned} & f(x_1 + h_1, \dots, x_m + h_m) - f(x, \dots, x) = \\ & \sum_{i=1}^{n-1} \frac{1}{i!} (h_1 \frac{\partial}{\partial x_1} + \dots + h_m \frac{\partial}{\partial x_m})^i f(x; h), \end{aligned}$$

$$k-1 *$$

where

$$1 \leq n-1$$

$$r_{n-1}(\dots; t) = \int_0^1 (h_1 \frac{\partial}{\partial x_1} + \dots + h_m \frac{\partial}{\partial x_m})^{n-1} f(x + th) dt.$$

Taylor's formula with integral form of the remainder.

Taylor's formula follows immediately from the corresponding Taylor formula for a function of one variable. In fact, consider the auxiliary function

$$p(t) = f(x + th),$$

which, by the hypotheses is defined on the closed interval

$0 < t < 1$ and (as we have verified above) belongs to the class $C^k[0, 1]$.

Then for $r \in [0, 1]$, by Taylor's formula for functions of one variable, we can write that

$$p(r) = p(0) + p'(0)r + \dots +$$

Notes

$$+ \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} \frac{f^{(i)}(a)}{i!} (x-a)^i + R_n(x)$$

0

Setting $r=1$ here, we obtain

$$V(1) = v(0) + v'(0)h + \dots + \frac{v^{(n-1)}(0)}{(n-1)!} h^{n-1} +$$

$$+ \frac{v^{(n)}(\xi)}{n!} h^n \quad (8'62)$$

0

Substituting the values

$$v^{(k)}(0) = f^{(k)}(a) \quad (k=0, \dots, n-1),$$

$$v^{(n)}(\xi) = f^{(n)}(\xi) \quad (\xi \in (a, x)),$$

into this equality in accordance with formula

Remark. If we write the remainder term in relation in the Lagrange form rather than the integral form, then the equality

$$R_n(x) = \frac{f^{(n)}(\xi)}{n!} (x-a)^n, \quad \xi \in (a, x),$$

where $0 < \theta < 1$, implies Taylor's formula with remainder term

$$r_n(x; h) = \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \frac{f^{(k)}(a)}{k!} (x-a)^k + \frac{f^{(n)}(\xi)}{n!} (x-a)^n.$$

This form of the remainder term, as in the case of functions of one variable is known the Lagrange form of the remainder term in Taylor's formula.

Since $f \in G(U(x); \mathbb{R})$, it follows from that

$$r_n(x; h) = \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \frac{f^{(k)}(a)}{k!} (x-a)^k + o(\|h\|^n) \text{ as } h \rightarrow 0,$$

and so we have the equality

$$f(x_1 + h, \dots, x_m + h) - f(x_1, \dots, x_m) =$$

$$= \sum_{k=1}^n \frac{f^{(k)}(x)}{k!} (h, \dots, h)^k + o(\|h\|^n) \text{ as } h \rightarrow 0$$

$k=1$

known Taylor's formula with the remainder term in Peano form.

4.7 EXTREMA OF FUNCTIONS OF SEVERAL VARIABLES

One of the most important applications of differential calculus is its use in finding extrema of functions.

Definition. A function $f: E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ defined on a set $E \subset \mathbb{R}^m$ has a local maximum (resp. local minimum) at an interior point x_0 of E if there exists a neighborhood $U(x_0) \subset E$ of the point x_0 such that $f(x) < f(x_0)$ (resp. $f(x) > f(x_0)$) for all $x \in U(x_0)$.

If the strict inequality $f(x) < f(x_0)$ holds for $x \in U(x_0) \setminus \{x_0\}$ (or, respectively, $f(x) > f(x_0)$), the function has a strict local maximum (resp. strict local minimum) at x_0 .

Definition. The local minima and maxima of a function are known as local extrema.

Theorem. Suppose a function $f: U(x_0) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ defined in a neighborhood $U(x_0) \subset \mathbb{R}^m$ of the point $x_0 = (x_1, \dots, x_m)$ has partial derivatives with respect to each of the variables x_1, \dots, x_m at the point x_0 .

Then a necessary condition for the function to have a local extremum at x_0 is that the following equalities hold at that point:

$$f'_1(x_0) = f'_2(x_0) = \dots = f'_m(x_0) = 0.$$

Proof. Consider the function $\varphi(x) = f(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_m)$ of one variable defined, according to the hypotheses of the theorem, in some neighborhood of the point x_j on the real line. At x_j the function $\varphi(x)$ has a local extremum, and since

$$\varphi'(x_0) = \varphi'(x_1, \dots, x_m),$$

it follows that $\varphi'(x_0) = 0$.

The other equalities are proved similarly.

Notes

We call attention to the fact that relations give only necessary but not sufficient conditions for an extremum of a function of several variables.

An example that confirms this is any example constructed for this purpose for functions of one variable. Thus, where previously we spoke of the function $x \mapsto x^3$, whose derivative is zero at zero, but has no extremum there

$$f(x) = x^3,$$

all of whose partial derivatives are zero at $X_0 = (0, \dots, 0)$, while the function obviously has no extremum at that point.

Theorem shows that if the function $f: G \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is defined on an open set $G \subset \mathbb{R}^m$, its local extrema are found either among the points at which

f is not differentiable or at the points where the differential $df(x_0)$ or, what is the same, the tangent mapping $f'(x_0)$, vanishes.

We know that if a mapping $f: U(x_0) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ defined in a neighborhood $U(x_0) \subset \mathbb{R}^m$ of the point $X_0 \in \mathbb{R}^m$ is differentiable at x_0 , then the matrix of the tangent mapping $f'(x_0): \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ has the form

$$df(x_0) = \begin{pmatrix} df_1(x_0) \\ \vdots \\ df_n(x_0) \end{pmatrix}$$

$$df(x_0) = \begin{pmatrix} df_1(x_0) \\ \vdots \\ df_n(x_0) \end{pmatrix}$$

Definition. The point X_0 is a critical point of the mapping $f: U(x_0) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ if the rank of the Jacobi matrix of the mapping at that point is less than $\min\{m, n\}$, that is, smaller than the maximum possible value it can have.

In particular, if $n=1$, the point X_0 is critical if condition holds, that is, all the partial derivatives of the function $f: U(x_0) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ vanish.

The critical points of real-valued functions are also known the stationary points of these functions.

After the critical points of a function have been found by solving the system, the subsequent analysis to determine whether they are extrema or not can often be carried out using Taylor's formula and the following sufficient conditions for the presence or absence of an extremum provided by that formula.

Theorem. Let $f : U(x_0) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be a function of class $C^2(U(x_0); \mathbb{R})$ defined in a neighborhood $U(x_0) \subset \mathbb{R}^m$ of the point $x_0 = (x_1, \dots, x_m) \in \mathbb{R}^m$, and let x_0 be a critical point of the function f .

If in the Taylor expansion of the function at the point x_0

$$f(x_0 + h) \approx f(x_0) + \sum_{i=1}^m \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_i}(x_0) h_i + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i,j=1}^m \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x_i \partial x_j}(x_0) h_i h_j + \dots$$

$$= f(x_0) + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i,j=1}^m \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x_i \partial x_j}(x_0) h_i h_j + \dots$$

$$= f(x_0) + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i,j=1}^m \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x_i \partial x_j}(x_0) h_i h_j + \dots$$

$$\sum_{i,j=1}^m \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x_i \partial x_j}(x_0) h_i h_j \equiv \sum_{i,j=1}^m a_{ij} h_i h_j$$

is positive-definite or negative-definite, then the point x_0 has a local extremum at x_0 , which is a strict local minimum if the quadratic form is positive-definite and a strict local maximum if it is negative definite. If it lets both positive and negative values, then the function does not have an extremum at x_0 .

Proof. Let $h \neq 0$ and $x_0 + h \in U(x_0)$. Let us represent h in the form where $o(1)$ is infinitesimal as $h \rightarrow 0$. It is clear from that the sign of the difference $f(x_0 + h) - f(x_0)$ is completely determined by the sign of the quantity in brackets. We now undertake to study this quantity.

The vector $e = (h_1/\|h\|, \dots, h_m/\|h\|)$ obviously has norm 1. The quadratic form is continuous as a function $h \in \mathbb{R}^m$, and therefore its restriction to the unit sphere $S(0; 1) = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^m \mid \|x\| = 1\}$ is also continuous on $S(0; 1)$. But the sphere S is a closed bounded subset in \mathbb{R}^m , that is, it is compact. Consequently, the form has both a minimum point and a maximum point on S , at which it lets respectively the values m and M .

Notes

If the form is positive-definite, then $0 < m < M$, and there is a number $\delta > 0$ such that $|o(l)| < m$ for $\|h\| < \delta$. Then for $\|h\| < \delta$ the bracket on the right-hand side of is positive, and consequently $f(x_0 + h) - f(x_0) > 0$ for $0 < \|h\| < \delta$. Thus, in this case the point x_0 is a strict local minimum of the function.

One can verify similarly that when the form is negative-definite, the function has a strict local maximum at the point x_0 . Thus Let e_m and e_M be points of the unit sphere at which the form gets the values m and M respectively, and Let $0 < m < M$. Setting $h = te_m$, where t is a sufficiently small positive number (so small that $x_0 + te_m \in U(x_0)$), we find that

$$f(x_0 + te_m) - f(x_0) = t^2(m + o(t)),$$

where $o(t) \rightarrow 0$ as $t \rightarrow 0$. Starting at some time (that is, for all sufficiently small values of t), the quantity $m + o(t)$ on the right-hand side of this equality will have the sign of m , that is, it will be negative.

Consequently, the left-hand side will also be negative. Similarly, setting $h = te_M$, we obtain

$$f(x_0 + te_M) - f(x_0) = t^2(M + o(t))$$

and consequently for all sufficiently small t the difference $f(x_0 + te_M) - f(x_0)$ is positive.

Thus, if the quadratic form gets both positive and negative values on the unit sphere, or, what is obviously equivalent, in \mathbb{R}^m , then in any neighborhood of the point x_0 there are both points where the value of the function is larger than $f(x_0)$ and points where the value is smaller than $f(x_0)$. Hence, in that case x_0 is not a local extremum of the function.

We now make a number of remarks in connection with this theorem.

Remark . Theorem says nothing about the case when the form is semi-definite, that is, nonpositive or nonnegative. It turns out that in this case the point can be an extremum, or it can not. This can be observed, in particular from the following example.

Example. Let us find the extrema of the function $f(x, y) = x^4 + y^4 - 2x^2$ which is defined in \mathbb{R}^2 .

In accordance with the necessary conditions we write the system of equations

$$4x^3 - 4x = 0,$$

<

$$4y^3 = 0,$$

from which we find three critical points: $(-1, 0)$, $(0, 0)$, $(1, 0)$.

Since

$$D^2f(x, y) = \begin{pmatrix} 12x^2 - 4 & 0 \\ 0 & 12y^2 \end{pmatrix},$$

at the three critical points the quadratic form has respectively the form

$$8x^2, -4h^2, 8y^2.$$

That is, in all cases it is positive semi-definite or negative semi-definite.

Theorem is not applicable, but since $f(x, y) = (x^2 - 1)^2 + y^4 - 1$, it is obvious that the function $f(x, y)$ has a strict minimum -1 (even a global minimum) at the points $(-1, 0)$, and $(1, 0)$, while there is no extremum at $(0, 0)$, since for $x=0$ and $y \neq 0$, we have $f(0, y) = y^4 > 0$, and for $y=0$ and sufficiently small $x \neq 0$ we have $f(x, 0) = x^4 - 2x^2 < 0$.

Remark. After the quadratic form has been obtained, the study of its definiteness can be carried out using the Sylvester's criterion. We recall

that

by the Sylvester criterion, a quadratic form with symmetric

matrix

with

principal minors

Notes

Δ

is positive-definite if and only if all its principal minors are positive; the form is negative-definite if and only if $\Delta < 0$ and the sign of the principal minor reverses each time its order increases by one.

Example • Let us find the extrema of the function

$$f(x, y) = xy \ln(x^2 + y^2),$$

except at the origin.

which is defined everywhere in the plane

Solving the system of equation

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = y \ln(x^2 + y^2) + 2xy = 0,$$

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = x \ln(x^2 + y^2) + 2xy = 0,$$

we find all the critical points of the function

$(0, \pm 1); (\pm 1, 0); (\pm \sqrt{2}, \pm \sqrt{2}); (\pm \sqrt{2}, -\sqrt{2})$ Since the function is odd with respect to each of its arguments individually, the points $(0, \pm 1)$ and $(\pm 1, 0)$ are obviously not extrema of the function.

It is also clear that this function does not change its value when the signs of both variables x and y are changed. Thus by studying only one of the remaining critical points, for example, we are able to draw

conclusions on the nature of the others.

Since local maxima of the function. This, however, could have been verified

directly, by checking the definiteness of the corresponding quadratic form.

For example, at the point $(\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{2})$ the matrix of the quadratic form has the form from which it is clear that it is negative-definite.

Remark . It should be kept in mind that we have given necessary conditions and sufficient conditions for an extremum of a function only at an interior point of its domain of definition. Thus in observing the absolute maximum or minimum of a function, it is necessary to examine the boundary points of the domain of definition along with the critical

interior points, since the function can let its maximal or minimal value at one of these boundary points.

The general principles of studying noninterior extrema will be considered in more detail later (observe the section devoted to extrema with constraint). It is useful to keep in mind that in searching for minima and maxima one can use certain simple considerations connected with the nature of the problem along with the formal techniques, and sometimes even instead of them. For example, if a differentiable function being studied in R_m must have a minimum because of the nature of the problem and turns out to be unbounded above, then if the function has only one critical point, one can assert without further investigation that that point is the minimum.

Example. Huygens problem. On the basis of the laws of conservation of energy and momentum of a closed mechanical system one can show by a simple computation that when two perfectly elastic balls having mass m_1 and m_2 and initial velocities v_1 and V_2 collide, their velocities after a central collision (when the velocities are directed along the line joining the centers) are determined by the relations

$$v_1 = \frac{(m_1 - m_2)v_1 + 2m_2V_2}{m_1 + m_2}$$

$$v_2 = \frac{(m_2 - m_1)V_2 + 2m_1v_1}{m_1 + m_2}$$

In particular, if a ball of mass M moving with velocity V strikes a motionless ball of mass m , then the velocity v acquired by the latter can be found from the formula

Notes

$$V = 2M V,$$

$$m + M v_1$$

from which one can observe that if $0 < m < M$, then $V < v < 2V$.

How can a significant part of the kinetic energy of a larger mass be communicated to a body of small mass? To do this, for example, one can insert

balls with intermediate masses between the balls of small and large mass: $m < m_1 < m_2 < \dots < m_n < M$. Let us compute (after Huygens) how the masses m_1, m_2, \dots, m_n should be chosen so that the body m will acquire maximum velocity after successive central collisions.

In accordance with formula we obtain the following expression for the required velocity as a function of the variables m_1, m_2, \dots, m_n :

$$v = \frac{2m \sqrt{m_1 m_2 \dots m_n}}{m + m_1 m_2 \dots m_n + M}$$

Thus Huygens' problem reduces to finding the maximum of the function

$$f(m_1, m_2, \dots, m_n) =$$

$$\frac{2m \sqrt{m_1 m_2 \dots m_n}}{m + m_1 m_2 \dots m_n + M}$$

The system of equations, which gives the necessary conditions for an interior extremum, reduces to the following system in the present case:

$$m \cdot m_2 - m_1^2 = 0,$$

$$m_1 \cdot m_3 - m_2^2 = 0,$$

$$m_{n-1} \cdot M - m_n^2 = 0,$$

from which it follows that the numbers m, m_1, \dots, m_n, M form a geometric

progression with ratio q equal to $\sqrt[n+1]{M/m}$.

The value of the velocity that results from this choice of masses is given by which agrees with if $n=0$.

It is clear from physical considerations that formula gives the maximal value of the function. However, this can also be verified formally (without invoking the cumbersome second derivatives).

We remark that it is clear from that if $m \rightarrow 0$, then $v \rightarrow \gg 2n+1V$.

Thus the intermediate masses do indeed significantly increase the portion of the kinetic energy of the mass M that is transmitted to the small mass m .

4.8 THE IMPLICIT FUNCTION THEOREM

Statement of the Problem and Preliminary Considerations

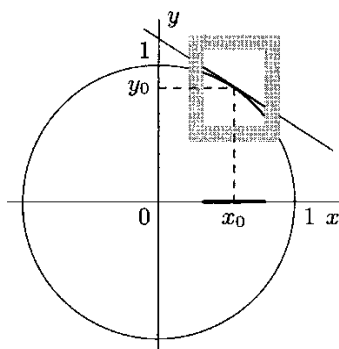
In this section we shall prove the implicit function theorem, which is important both intrinsically and because of its numerous applications.

Let us begin by explaining the problem. Suppose, for example, we have the relation

$$x^2 + y^2 - 1 = 0$$

between the coordinates x, y of points in the plane M^2 . The set of all points

of M^2 satisfying this condition is the unit circle



Notes

The presence of the relation shows that after fixing one of the coordinates, for example, x , we can no longer choose the second coordinate

arbitrarily. Thus relation determines the dependence of y on x . We are interested in the question of the conditions under which the implicit relation

can be solved as an explicit functional dependence $y=y(x)$.

we find that

$$y=\pm\sqrt{1-x^2}$$

that is, to each value of x such that $|x| < 1$, there are actually two admissible

values of y . In forming a functional relation $y=y(x)$ satisfying relation one cannot give preference to either of the values without invoking additional requirements. For example, the function $y(x)$ that lets the value $+\sqrt{1-x^2}$ at rational points of the closed interval $[-1, 1]$ and the value

$-\sqrt{1-x^2}$ at irrational points obviously satisfies

It is clear that one can create infinitely many functional relations satisfying by varying this example.

The question whether the set defined in M^2 by is the graph of a function $y=y(x)$ obviously has a negative answer, since from the geometric point of view it is equivalent to the question whether it is possible to establish

a one-to-one direct projection of a circle into a line.

But observation suggests that nevertheless, in a neighborhood of a particular point (x_0, y_0) the arc projects in a one-to-one manner

into the x -axis, and that it can be represented uniquely as $y=y(x)$, where $y(x)$ is a continuous function defined in a neighborhood of the point x_0 and assuming the value y_0 at x_0 . In this aspect, the only bad points are

$(-1, 0)$ and $(1, 0)$, since no arc of the circle having them as interior points projects in a one-to-one manner into the x -axis. Even so, neighborhoods

of

these points on the circle are well situated relative to the y -axis, and can be represented as the graph of a function $x=x(y)$ that is continuous in a neighborhood of the point 0 and lets the value -1 or 1 according as the arc in question contains the point $(-1, 0)$ or $(1, 0)$.

How is it possible to find out analytically when a geometric locus of points

defined by a relation of the type can be represented in the form of an explicit function $y=y(x)$ or $x=x(y)$ in a neighborhood of a point on the locus?

We shall discuss this question using the following, now familiar, method.

We have a function $F(x, y) = x^2 + y^2 - 1$. The local behavior of this function

in a neighborhood of a point is well described by its differential

$$K(x_0, y_0)(x - x_0) + F_y(x_0, y_0)(y - y_0),$$

since

$$F(x, y) = F(x_0, y_0) + K(x_0, y_0)(x - x_0) + F_y(x_0, y_0)(y - y_0) + o(\sqrt{(x - x_0)^2 + (y - y_0)^2})$$

as $(x, y) \rightarrow (x_0, y_0)$.

If $F(x_0, y_0) = 0$ and we are interested in the behavior of the level curve

$$F(x, y) = 0$$

of the function in a neighborhood of the point we can judge that behavior from the position of the (tangent) line

$$K(x_0, y_0)(x - x_0) + F_y(x_0, y_0)(y - y_0) = 0.$$

If this line is situated so that its equation can be solved with respect to y , then, since the curve $F(x, y) = 0$ differs very little from this line in a neighborhood of the point we can hope that it also can be written in the form $y=y(x)$ in some neighborhood of the point-

Notes

The same can be said about local solvability of $F(x, y)=0$ with respect to x .

Writing for the specific relation, we obtain the following equation for the tangent line:

$$x_0(x - x_0) + \frac{2}{0}(2 - 2/y_0) = 0.$$

This equation can always be solved for y when $2/y_0 \neq 0$, that is, at all points

of the circle except $(-1, 0)$ and $(1, 0)$. It is solvable with respect to x at all points of the circle except $(0, -1)$ and $(0, 1)$.

4.9 ELEMENTARY VERSION OF THE IMPLICIT FUNCTION THEOREM

In this section we shall obtain the implicit function theorem by a very intuitive, but not very constructive method, one that is adapted only to the case of real-valued functions of real variables. The reader can become familiar with another method of obtaining this theorem, one that is in many ways

preferable, and with a more detailed analysis is an elementary version of the implicit function theorem.

Proposition. If the function $F : U(x_0, y_0) \rightarrow K$ defined in a neighborhood

$U(x_0, y_0)$ of the point $(x_0, y_0) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ such that

1° $F \in C^p(U; \mathbb{R})$, where $p > 1$,

2° $F(x_0, y_0) = 0$,

3° $F_y(x_0, y_0) \neq 0$,

then there exist a two-dimensional interval $I = I_x \times I_y$ where

$I_x = \{ x \in \mathbb{R} \mid |x - x_0| < \delta \}$, $I_y = \{ y \in K \mid |y - y_0| < \eta \}$,

that is a neighborhood of the point (x_0, y_0) contained in $U\{x_0, y_0\}$, and a function $f \in C^1(I_x \times I_y)$ such that

$$F(x, y) = 0 \text{ and } y = f(x)$$

for any point $(x, y) \in I_x \times I_y$ and the derivative of the function $y = f(x)$ at the points $x \in I_x$ can be computed from the formula

$$f'(x) = -\frac{F_x(x, f(x))}{F_y(x, f(x))}.$$

Before taking up the proof, we shall give several possible reformulations of the conclusion, which should bring out the meaning of the relation itself.

Proposition says that under hypotheses 1°, 2°, and 3° the portion of the set defined by the relation $F(x, y) = 0$ that belongs to the neighborhood

$I_x \times I_y$ of the point (x_0, y_0) is the graph of a function $f: I_x \rightarrow I_y$ of class

$$C^1(I_x; I_y).$$

In other words, one can say that inside the neighborhood I of the point (x_0, y_0) the equation $F(x, y) = 0$ has a unique solution for y , and the function

$$y = f(x) \text{ is that solution, that is, } F(x, f(x)) = 0 \text{ on } I_x.$$

It follows in turn from this that if $y = f(x)$ is a function defined on I_x that is known to satisfy the relation $F(x, f(x)) = 0$ on I_x , $f(x_0) = y_0$, and this function is continuous at the point $x_0 \in I_x$, then there exists a neighborhood

$$A \subset I_x \text{ of } x_0 \text{ such that } f(A) \subset I_y, \text{ and then } f(x) = f(x) \text{ for } x \in A.$$

Without the assumption that the function f is continuous at the point x_0 and the condition $f(x_0) = y_0$, this last conclusion could turn out to be incorrect, as can be observed from the example of the circle already studied.

Let us now prove Proposition.

Proof Suppose for definiteness that $F_y(x_0, y_0) > 0$. Since $F \in C^1(U \setminus R)$, it follows that $F_y(x, y) > 0$ also in some neighborhood of (x_0, y_0) . In

Notes

order

to avoid introducing new notation, we can let without loss of generality that $F_y(x, y) > 0$ at every point of the original neighborhood $U(x_0, y_0)$ -

Moreover, shrinking the neighborhood to $D(x_0, \delta)$ if necessary, we can assume that it is a disk of radius $r = \delta/2 > 0$ with center at (x_0, y_0) .

Since $F_y(x, y) > 0$ in D , the function $F(x_0, y)$ is defined and monotonically

increasing as a function of y on the closed interval $y_0 - \delta < y < y_0 + \delta$.

Consequently,

$$F(x_0, y_0 - \delta) < F(x_0, y_0) = 0 < F(x_0, y_0 + \delta)$$

By the continuity of the function F in D , there exists a positive number $\alpha < \delta$ such that the relations

$$F(x, y_0 - \delta) < 0 < F(x, y_0 + \delta)$$

hold for $|x - x_0| < \alpha$.

We shall now show that the rectangle $I = I_x \times I_y$, where

$$I_x = \{ x \in E \mid |x - x_0| < \alpha \}, \quad I_y = \{ y \in \mathbb{R} \mid |y - y_0| < \delta \},$$

is the required two-dimensional interval in which relation holds.

For each $x \in I_x$ we fix the vertical closed interval with endpoints $(x, y_0 - \delta)$

and $(x, y_0 + \delta)$. Regarding $F(x, y)$ as a function of y on that closed interval,

we obtain a strictly increasing continuous function that takes values of opposite sign at the endpoints of the interval. Consequently, for each $x \in I_x$,

there is a unique point $y = y(x) \in I_y$ such that $F(x, y(x)) = 0$. Setting $y(x) = \eta(x)$.

We now establish that $\eta \in C^p(I_x \setminus I_y)$.

We begin by showing that the function f is continuous at x_0 and that $f(x_0) = y_0$. This last equality obviously follows from the fact that for $x = x_0$

there is a unique point $y(x_0) \in I_y$ such that $F(x_0, y(x_0)) = 0$. At the same time, $F(x_0, y_0) = 0$, and so $f(x_0) = y_0$.

Given a number ϵ , $0 < \epsilon < 3$, we can repeat the proof of the existence of the function $f(x)$ and find a number δ , $0 < \delta < \alpha$ such that in the two-dimensional interval $I = I_x \times I_y$, where

$$I_x = \{ x \in \mathbb{R} \mid |x - x_0| < \delta \}, \quad I_y = \{ y \in \mathbb{R} \mid |y - y_0| < \epsilon \},$$

the relation

$$F(x, y) = 0 \text{ in } I \implies y = f(x), \quad x \in I_x$$

holds with a new function $f: I_x \rightarrow I_y$.

But $I_x \subset J_x$, $I_y \subset J_y$, and $I \subset J$, and therefore it follows from that

$f(x) = f(x)$ for $x \in I_x \subset J_x$. We have thus verified that

$$|f(x) - f(x_0)| = |f(x) - y_0| < \epsilon \text{ for } |x - x_0| < \delta.$$

We have now established that the function f is continuous at the point x_0 . But any point $(x, y) \in I$ at which $F(x, y) = 0$ can also be taken as the initial point of the construction, since conditions 2° and 3° hold at that

point. Carrying out that construction inside the interval J , we would once again arrive via at the corresponding part of the function f considered in a neighborhood of x . Hence the function f is continuous at x . Thus we have established that $f \in C(I_x; I_y)$.

We shall now show that $f \in C^1(I_x; I_y)$.

Let the number Δx be such that

$$x + \Delta x \in I_x. \text{ Let } y = f(x) \text{ and } y + \Delta y =$$

$f(x + \Delta x)$. Applying the mean-value theorem to the function $F(x, y)$ inside

the interval I , we find that

$$0 = F(x + \Delta x, f(x + \Delta x)) - F(x, f(x)) =$$

Notes

$$= F(x + \Delta x, y + \Delta y) - F(x, y) =$$

$$= F_x(x + \theta \Delta x, y + \theta \Delta y) \Delta x + F_y(x + \theta \Delta x, y + \theta \Delta y) \Delta y \quad (0 < \theta < 1),$$

from which, taking account of the relation $F_y(x, y) \neq 0$ in I , we obtain

$$\Delta x F'_x(x + \theta \Delta x, y + \theta \Delta y)$$

$$\Delta x F_y(x + \theta \Delta x, y + \theta \Delta y)$$

Since $f \in C^1(I_x; I_y)$, it follows that $\Delta y \rightarrow 0$ as $\Delta x \rightarrow 0$, and, taking

account of the relation $f \in C^1(U; \mathbb{R})$, as $\Delta x \rightarrow 0$

$$f'(x) = F_x(x, f(x))$$

$$\Delta x \cdot F'_x(x, y)$$

where $y = f(x)$.

By the theorem on continuity of composite functions that $f \in C^1(I_x; I_y)$.

If $f \in C^2(U; \mathbb{R})$, the right-hand side can be differentiated with

respect to x , and we find that

$$r(x) = \Delta x \cdot F''_{xx}(x, f(x)) \Delta x + F''_{xy}(x, f(x)) \Delta x \Delta y + F''_{yy}(x, f(x)) \Delta y^2$$

$$+ \Delta x^3 \cdot \dots$$

where F_x, F_y, F_{xx}, F_{xy} , and F_{yy} are all computed at the point $(x, f(x))$.

Thus $f \in C^k(I_x; I_y)$ if $f \in C^k(U; \mathbb{R})$. Since the order of the derivatives

of f on the right-hand side and so forth, is one less than

the order on the left-hand side of the equality, we find by induction that

$$f \in C^k(I_x; I_y) \text{ if } f \in C^k(p; \mathbb{R})$$

Example. Let us return to relation studied above, which defines a circle in \mathbb{R}^2 , and verify Proposition on this example.

In this case

$$F(x, y) = x^2 + y^2 - 1,$$

and it is obvious that $f \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2; \mathbb{R})$. Next,

$$F'_x(x, y) = 2x, \quad F'_y(x, y) = 2y,$$

so that $F_y(x, y) \neq 0$ if $y \neq 0$. Thus, by Proposition 1, for any point (x_0, y_0) of

this circle different from the points $(-1, 0)$ and $(1, 0)$ there is a neighborhood such that the arc of the circle contained in that neighborhood can be written

in the form $y = f(x)$. Direct computation confirms this, and $f'(x) = \frac{-x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$

or $f'(x) = -\frac{x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$.

Next, by Proposition

$f(x_0) = F^{-1}(y_0) = \dots$

$F_y(x_0, y_0) \neq 0$

$f'(x) = \dots$,

$f(x)$

and computation with it leads to the same result,

\dots

$f'(x_0) = \dots$,

\dots

as computation from formula obtained from Proposition

It is important to note that compute $f'(x)$ without even having an explicit expression for the relation $y = f(x)$, if only we know that $f(x_0) = y_0$.

The condition $y_0 = f(x_0)$ must be prescribed, however, in order to distinguish the portion of the level curve

$F(x, y) = 0$ that we intend to describe in the form $y = f(x)$.

It is clear from the example of the circle that giving only the coordinate does not determine an arc of the circle, and only after fixing y_0 have we distinguished one of the two possible arcs in this case.

Check your Progress-1

Discuss Differential Calculus Of Real-Valued Functions Of Several Variables

Discuss Higher-Order Partial Derivatives

4.10 LET US SUM UP

In this unit we have discussed the definition and example of The Basic Facts Of Differential Calculus Of Real-Valued Functions Of Several Variables, The Mean-Value Theorem, A Sufficient Condition For Differentiability Of A Function Of Several Variables, Higher-Order Partial Derivatives, Real-Valued Functions Of Several Variables, Taylor's Formula, Extrema Of Functions Of Several Variables, The Implicit Function Theorem, Elementary Version Of The Implicit Function Theorem

4.11 KEYWORDS

1. The Basic Facts Of Differential Calculus Of Real-Valued Functions Of Several Variables ...The Mean-Value Theorem: Let $f : G \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be a real-valued function defined in a region $G \subset \mathbb{R}^m$
2. A Sufficient Condition For Differentiability Of A Function Of Several Variables.... Let $f : U(x) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be a function defined in a neighborhood $U(x) \subset \mathbb{R}^m$ of the point $x=(x_1, \dots, x_m)$.
3. Higher-Order Partial Derivatives If a function $f : G \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ defined in a domain $G \subset \mathbb{R}^m$ has a partial derivative with respect to one of the

variables

4. Real-Valued Functions Of Several Variables.... The function $f : G \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ has partial derivatives.

5. Taylor's Formula: If the function $f : U(x) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is defined and belongs to class

$C^{(n)}(C^f(s))$.

6. Extrema Of Functions Of Several Variables: One of the most important applications of differential calculus is its use in finding extrema of functions.

4.12 QUESTIONS FOR REVIEW

Explain Differential Calculus Of Real-Valued Functions Of Several Variables

Explain Higher-Order Partial Derivatives

4.13 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

Differential Calculus Of Real-Valued Functions Of Several Variables

(answer for Check your Progress-1

Q)

Higher-Order Partial Derivatives

(answer for Check your Progress-1

Q)

4.14 REFERENCES

- Function of Variables
- System of Equation
- Elementary Variables
- Calculus of Several Variables
- Advance Calculus of Several Variables

UNIT - 5: TRANSITION TO THE CASE OF A RELATION

STRUCTURE

5.0 Objectives

5.1 Introduction

5.2 Transition To The Case Of A Relation

5.3 The Implicit Function Theorem

5.4 Some Corollaries of Implicit Function Theorem Inverse Function Theorem

5.5 Differential Calculus In Several Variables

5.6 Differential Calculus In Several Variables Functional Dependence

5.7 Local Resolution of Diffeomorphism Into Composition of Elementary Ones

5.8 Morse's Theorem

5.9 Let Us Sum Up

5.10 Keywords

5.11 Questions For Review

5.12 Answers To Check Your Progress

5.13 References

5.0 OBJECTIVES

After studying this unit, you should be able to:

Learn, Understand about Transition To The Case Of A Relation

Learn, Understand about The Implicit Function Theorem

Learn, Understand about Some Corollaries Of The Implicit Function Theorem

The Inverse Function Theorem

Learn, Understand about Differential Calculus In Several Variables

Learn, Understand about Differential Calculus In Several Variables
Functional Dependence

Learn, Understand about Local Resolution Of A Diffeomorphism Into A
Composition Of Elementary Ones

Learn, Understand about Morse's Theorem

5.1 INTRODUCTION

In mathematics advanced calculus whose aim is to provide a firm logical foundation of analysis of calculus and a course in linear algebra treats analysis in one variable & analysis in several variables

Transition To The Case Of A Relation, The Implicit Function Theorem, Some Corollaries Of The Implicit Function Theorem, The Inverse Function Theorem, Differential Calculus In Several Variables, Differential Calculus In Several Variables Functional Dependence, Local Resolution Of A Diffeomorphism Into A Composition Of Elementary Ones, Morse's Theorem

5.2 TRANSITION TO THE CASE OF A RELATION

$$F(x_1, \dots, x_m, y) = 0$$

The following proposition is a simple generalization of Proposition to the case of a relation $F(x_1, \dots, x_m, y) = 0$.

Notes

Proposition. If a function $F : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ defined in a neighborhood $U \subset \mathbb{R}^{m+1}$ of the point $(x_0, y_0) = (x_1, \dots, x_m, y)$ is such that

$$1^\circ F \in C^p(U, \mathbb{R}), \quad p \geq 1,$$

$$2^\circ F(x_0, y) = F(x_1, \dots, x_m, y) = 0,$$

then there exists an $(m+1)$ -dimensional interval $I = I^m \times I_1$; where

$$I^m = \{ x = (x_1, \dots, x_m) \in \mathbb{R}^m \mid |x_i - x_{i0}| < \delta_i, \quad i=1, \dots, m \},$$

$$I_1 = \{ y \in \mathbb{R} \mid |y - y_0| < \delta \},$$

which is a neighborhood of the point (x_0, y_0) contained in U , and a function

$$f : I \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \text{ such that for any point } (x, y) \in I$$

$$F(x_1, \dots, x_m, y) = f(x_1, \dots, x_m)$$

and the partial derivatives of the function $y = f(x_1, \dots, x_m)$ at the points of I_x can be computed from the formula

$$f_{x_i} = - \frac{F_{x_i y}}{F_{yy}} \Big|_{(x, y)} \cdot$$

Proof. The proof of the existence of the interval $I = I^m \times I_1$ and the existence of the function $y = f(x) = f(x_1, \dots, x_m)$ and its continuity in I^m is a verbatim repetition of the corresponding part of the proof of Proposition with only a single change, which reduces to the fact that the symbol x must now be interpreted as (x_1, \dots, x_m) and a as (a_1, \dots, a_m) .

If we now fix all the variables in the functions $F(x_1, \dots, x_m, y)$ and $f(x_1, \dots, x_m)$ except x_1 and y , we have the hypotheses of Proposition where now the role of x is played by the variable x_1 . Formula follows from this. It is clear from this formula that $f_{x_i} \in C^p(I^m; I_1)$ ($i=1, \dots, m$), that is, $f_{x_i} \in C^p(I^m, I_1)$. Reasoning as in the proof of Proposition we establish by induction that $f_{x_i} \in C^p(I^m, I_1)$ when $F \in C^p(U; \mathbb{R})$. \square

Example. Let that the function $F : G \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is defined in a domain $G \subset \mathbb{R}^m$ and belongs to the class $C^1(G; \mathbb{R})$; $x_0 = (x_1, \dots, x_m) \in G$ and $\nabla F(x_0) = (F_{x_1}, \dots, F_{x_m}) = 0$. If x_0 is not a critical point of F , then at least one of the partial derivatives of F at x_0 is nonzero. Suppose, for example, that $F_{x_1}(x_0) \neq 0$.

Then, by Proposition in some neighborhood of x_0 the subset of \mathbb{R}^m defined by the equation $F(x_1, \dots, x_m) = 0$ can be defined as the graph of a function $x_m = \varphi(x_1, \dots, x_{m-1})$, defined in a neighborhood of the point $(x_1, \dots, x_{m-1}) \in \mathbb{R}^{m-1}$ that is continuously differentiable in this neighborhood and such that $\varphi(x_1, \dots, x_{m-1}) = x_m$.

Thus, in a neighborhood of a noncritical point x_0 of F the equation

$$F(x_1, \dots, x_m) = 0$$

defines an $(m - 1)$ -dimensional surface.

In particular, in the case of \mathbb{R}^3 the equation

$$F(x, y, z) = 0$$

defines a two-dimensional surface in a neighborhood of a noncritical point (x_0, y_0, z_0) satisfying the equation, which, when the condition $F_{x_3}(x_0, y_0, z_0) \neq 0$ holds, can be locally written in the form

$$z = \varphi(x, y).$$

As we know, the equation of the plane tangent to the graph of this function at the point (x_0, y_0, z_0) has the form

$$z - z_0 = F_{x_1}(x_0, y_0)(x - x_0) + F_{x_2}(x_0, y_0)(y - y_0) + F_{x_3}(x_0, y_0)(z - z_0) = 0$$

But by formula

$$dF(x_0, y_0, z_0) = F_{x_1}(x_0, y_0, z_0)dx + F_{x_2}(x_0, y_0, z_0)dy + F_{x_3}(x_0, y_0, z_0)dz$$

$$= F_{x_1}(x_0, y_0, z_0)(x - x_0) + F_{x_2}(x_0, y_0, z_0)(y - y_0) + F_{x_3}(x_0, y_0, z_0)(z - z_0) = 0$$

and therefore the equation of the tangent plane can be rewritten as

$$F_{x_1}(x_0, y_0, z_0)(x - x_0) + F_{x_2}(x_0, y_0, z_0)(y - y_0) + F_{x_3}(x_0, y_0, z_0)(z - z_0) = 0,$$

which is symmetric in the variables x, y, z .

Notes

Similarly, in the general case we obtain the equation

$$\sum_{i=1}^m$$

$$Y.F'Ax o)(xi-4)=0$$

$$i= 1$$

of the hyperplane in R^m tangent at the point (x_1, \dots, x^m) to the surface given by the equation $F(x_1, \dots, x_m)=0$ (naturally, under the assumptions that $F(x_0)=0$ and that x_0 is a noncritical point of F).

It can be observed from these equations that, given the Euclidean structure

on R^m , one can assert that the vector

$$dF$$

$$\text{grad}F(x_0) = (\nabla F)$$

is orthogonal to the r -level surface $F(x)=r$ of the function F at a corresponding point $x_0 \in R^m$.

For example, for the function

$$F(x, y, z) = x^2 + y^2 + z^2$$

$$F(x, y, z) = x^2 + y^2 + z^2$$

defined in R^3 , the r -level is the empty set if $r < 0$, a single point if $r=0$, and the ellipsoid

$$x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = r$$

$$x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = r$$

$$x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = r$$

if $r > 0$. If (x_0, y_0, z_0) is a point on this ellipsoid, then by what has been proved, the vector

$$\nabla F(x_0, y_0, z_0) = (2x_0, 2y_0, 2z_0)$$

$$\text{grad } F(x_0, z_0) = -\lambda \nabla F(x_0, z_0)$$

is orthogonal to this ellipsoid at the point (x_0, z_0) and the tangent plane

to it at this point has the equation

5.3 THE IMPLICIT FUNCTION THEOREM

We now turn to the general case of a system of equations

$$F(x - x_0, z - z_0) = 0$$

$$= 0,$$

$$a^2 + b^2 + c^2 = r^2$$

which, when we take account of the fact that the point (x_0, z_0) lies on the ellipsoid, can be rewritten as

$$x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = r^2$$

$$x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = r^2$$

$$x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = r^2$$

$$x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = r^2$$

$$F(x, \dots, z)$$

which

we shall solve with respect to z , that is, find a system of functional relations

$$z = f(x, y)$$

$$z = f(x, y)$$

locally equivalent to the system

For the sake of brevity, convenience in writing, and clarity of statement,

Let us agree that $x = (x_1, \dots, x_m)$, $y = (y_1, \dots, y_n)$. We shall write the left

hand side of the system as $F(x, y)$, the system of equations as

$$F(x, y) = 0, \text{ and the mapping as } y = f(x).$$

If

Notes

$$x_0 = (x_1, \dots, x_m), y_0 = (y_1, \dots, y_n)$$

$$a = (a_1, \dots, a_m), b = (b_1, \dots, b_n)$$

the notation $\|x - x_0\| < a$ or $\|y - y_0\| < b$ will mean that $\|x - x_0\| < a$

($i=1, \dots, m$) or $\|y - y_0\| < b$ ($j=1, \dots, n$) respectively.

We next set

$$D_x F(x, y)$$

$$D_y F(x, y)$$

We remark that the matrix $F_y(x, y)$ is square and hence invertible if and only if its determinant is nonzero. In the case $n=1$, it reduces to a single element, and in that case the invertibility of $F_y(x, y)$ is equivalent to the condition that that single element is nonzero. As usual, we shall denote the

matrix inverse to $F_y(x, y)$ by $[F_y(x, y)]^{-1}$.

We now state the main result of the present section.

Theorem. (Implicit function theorem). If the mapping $F : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ defined in a neighborhood U of the point $(x_0, y_0) \in \mathbb{R}^m \times \mathbb{R}^n$ is such that

$$1^\circ F \in C^p(U, \mathbb{R}^n), p > 1,$$

$$2^\circ F(x_0, y_0) = 0,$$

$$3^\circ F_y(x_0, y_0) \text{ is an invertible matrix,}$$

then there exists an $(m+n)$ -dimensional interval $I = I^m \times I^n \subset U$, where

$$I^m = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^m \mid \|x - x_0\| < a\}, \quad I^n = \{y \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid \|y - y_0\| < b\},$$

and a mapping $f \in C^p(I^m; I^n)$ such that

$$F(x, y) = 0 \iff y = f(x)$$

for any point $(x, y) \in I^m \times I^n$ and

$$f'(x) = -[F_y(x, f(x))]^{-1} F_x(x, f(x))$$

Proof The proof of the theorem will rely on Proposition and the elementary properties of determinants. We shall break it into stages,

reasoning by

induction. For $n=1$, the theorem is the same as Proposition and is therefore true.

Suppose the theorem is true for dimension $n - 1$. We shall show that it is

then valid for dimension n .

a) By hypothesis 3° , the determinant of the matrix is nonzero at the point $(x_0, t_0) \in M^{m+n}$ and hence in some neighborhood of the point (x_0, t_0) . Consequently at least one element of the last row of this matrix is

nonzero. Up to a change in the notation, we can let that the element dF_n

is nonzero.

Then

Then applying Proposition to the relation

$$F_n(x_1, \dots, x_m, y_1, \dots, y_n) = 0,$$

we find an interval $I_{m+n} = (J^{T^m} \times J^{T^{n-1}}) \times J^* \subset U$ and a function $f \in C^1(I_{m+n})$ such that

$$(F_n(a_1, \dots, x_m, y_1, \dots, y_n) = 0 \text{ in } I_{m+n})$$

$$y_n = f(x_1, \dots, x_m, y_1, \dots, y_{n-1}),$$

Substituting the resulting expression $y_n = f(x_1, \dots, x_m, y_1, \dots, y_{n-1})$ for the variable y_n in the first $n - 1$ equations of (8.90), we obtain $n - 1$ relations

$$F_1(x_1, \dots, x_m, y_1, \dots, y_{n-1}) = 0$$

$$= F_1(x_1, \dots, x_m, y_1, \dots, y_{n-1}, f(x_1, \dots, x_m, y_1, \dots, y_{n-1})) = 0,$$

$$\dots$$

$$= F_{n-1}(x_1, \dots, x_m, y_1, \dots, y_{n-1}, f(x_1, \dots, x_m, y_1, \dots, y_{n-1})) = 0.$$

It is clear that $f \in C^1(I_{m+n}; \mathbb{R})$ ($t=1, \dots, n-1$), and

Notes

$$F(x_1, \dots, x_n, y_1, \dots, y_{n-1}) = 0 \quad (1),$$

since $F(x_1, \dots, x_n, y_1, \dots, y_{n-1}) = 0$ and $F_i(x_1, \dots, x_n, y_1, \dots, y_{n-1}) = 0$ ($i=1, \dots, n$).

By definition of the functions F_k ($k=1, \dots, n-1$),

$$F_k = F(x_1, \dots, x_n, y_1, \dots, y_{n-1})$$

$$= F(x_1, \dots, x_n, y_1, \dots, y_{n-1})$$

$$F_k = F(x_1, \dots, x_n, y_1, \dots, y_{n-1})$$

Further setting

$$F_k(x_1, \dots, x_m, y_1, \dots, y_{n-1}) :=$$

$$= F(x_1, \dots, x_m, y_1, \dots, y_{n-1}),$$

we find by that $F_k = 0$ in its domain of definition, and therefore

$$dF_k = dF(x_1, \dots, x_m, y_1, \dots, y_{n-1})$$

$$= dF(x_1, \dots, x_m, y_1, \dots, y_{n-1})$$

$$dF_k = dF(x_1, \dots, x_m, y_1, \dots, y_{n-1})$$

Taking account of relations the properties of determinants

we can now observe that the determinant of the matrix

equals the determinant of the matrix F_1, \dots, F_{n-1}

$$dF_1, \dots, dF_{n-1}, dF$$

Since F_1, \dots, F_{n-1} and F , substituting Z_1, \dots, Z_{n-1} from

in place of the corresponding variables in the function

$$F_n = f(x_1, \dots, x_m, y_1, \dots, y_{n-1})$$

we obtain a relation

$$y_n = f_n(x_1, \dots, x_m)$$

between y_n and (x_1, \dots, x_m) .

We now show that the system

$$y_1 = f_1(x_1, \dots, x_m),$$

$< x_{el} ? .$

$, y_n = f_n(x_1, \dots, x_m),$

which defines a mapping $f: C^1(\mathbb{R}^m; \mathbb{R}^n)$, where $I^m = \{y \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid y_n = f_n(x_1, \dots, x_m)\}$, is equivalent to the system of equations in the neighborhood $I^m \times I^n = I^m \times I^n$.

In fact, inside $I^m \times I^n = (J^m \times I^1) \times J^*$ we began by replacing the last equation of the original system with the equality $y_n = f(x_1, \dots, y_{n-1})$, which is equivalent to it by virtue of the second system so obtained, we passed to a third system equivalent to it by

replacing the variable y_n in the first $n - 1$ equations with $f(x_1, \dots, y_{n-1})$. We then replaced the first $n - 1$ equations of the third system inside $I^m \times I^{n-1} \subset I^m \times I^{n-1}$ with relations which are equivalent to them. In that way, we obtained a fourth system, after which we passed to the final system which is equivalent to it inside $I^m \times I^{n-1} \times I^1 = I^m \times I^n$ by replacing the variables y_1, \dots, y_{n-1} with their expressions in the last equation $y_n = f(x_1, \dots, x_m, y_1, \dots, y_{n-1})$ of the fourth system, obtaining as the last equation.

To complete the proof of the theorem it remains only to verify formula (8.103). Since the systems are equivalent in the neighborhood $I^m \times I^n$ of the point (x_0, y_0) , it follows that

$$F(x, f(x)) = 0, \quad x \in I^m.$$

In coordinates this means that in the domain I^m

$$F_k(x_1, \dots, x_m, f_1(x_1, \dots, x_m), \dots, f_n(x_1, \dots, x_m)) = 0$$

$$(k = 1, \dots, n). \quad (8.104)$$

Since $f \in C^1(\mathbb{R}^m; \mathbb{R}^n)$ and $F \in C^1(\mathbb{R}^n; \mathbb{R}^n)$, where $p > 1$, it follows that $G \in C^1(\mathbb{R}^m; \mathbb{R}^n)$ and differentiating the identity we obtain

$$+ \quad (J^* - I)$$

$$J = 1$$

Relations are obviously equivalent to the single matrix equality

Notes

$$K(x, y) + F_y(x, y) \cdot f'(x) = 0$$

in which $y = y(x)$.

Taking account of the invertibility of the matrix $F'_y(x, y)$ in a neighborhood of the point (x_0, y_0) we find by this equality that

$$f'(x) = - \frac{K(x, y)}{F'_y(x, y)}$$

and the theorem is completely proved.

The solution of this problem gives another proof of the fundamental theorem of this section, perhaps less intuitive and constructive than the one given above, but shorter. Suppose the hypotheses of the implicit function theorem are satisfied, and

Let

$$F_i(x, y) = 0, \quad i = 1, \dots, n$$

$$F_i(x, y) = W_i(x, y), \quad i = 1, \dots, n$$

be the i th row of the matrix $F_y(x, y)$.

Show that the determinant of the matrix formed from the vectors $F_y(x_i, y_i)$ is nonzero if all the points (x_i, y_i) ($i = 1, \dots, n$) lie in some sufficiently small neighborhood $U = I^m \times I^n$ of (x_0, y_0) . Show that, if for $x \in I^m$ there are points $y_1, y_2 \in I^n$ such that $F(x, y_1) = 0$ and $F(x, y_2) = 0$, then for each $i \in \{1, \dots, n\}$ there is a point (x, y) lying on the closed interval with endpoints (x, y_1) and (x, y_2) such that $F_i(x, y) = 0$ ($i = 1, \dots, n$). Show that this implies that $y_1 = y_2$, that is, if the implicit function $y = y(x)$ exists, it is unique. Show that if the open ball $B(y_0; r)$ is contained in I^n , then $F(x_0, y) = 0$ for $\|y - y_0\| = r > 0$.

The function $\|F(x_0, y)\|$ is continuous and has a positive minimum value p on the sphere $\|y - y_0\| = r$.

There exists $S > 0$ such that for $\|x - x_0\| < S$ we have

$$\|F(x, y)\| > p/2, \quad \text{if } \|y - y_0\| = r,$$

$$\|F(x, y)\| < p/2, \quad \text{if } y = y_0.$$

For any fixed x such that $\|x - x_0\| < S$ the function $\|F(x, 2/r)\|$ attains a minimum at some interior point $y=f(x)$ of the open ball $\|y - 2/0\| < r$, and since the matrix $F^{\wedge}x, / (x)^{\wedge}$ is invertible, it follows that $F^{\wedge}x, / (x)^{\wedge}=0$. This establishes the existence of the implicit function $/:$ $B(x_0;S) \rightarrow B(y_0;r)$.

If $Ay=f(x + Ax) - / (x)$, then

$$Ay = \blacksquare [F^{\wedge}]Ax,$$

where $F'y$ is the matrix whose rows are the vectors $Fy(x_i, y_i)$, $(i=1, \dots, n)$, (x_j, y_j) being a point on the closed interval with endpoints (x, y) and $(x + f Ax, y + f Ay)$. The symbol $F'x$ has a similar meaning.

Show that this relation implies that the function $y=f(x)$ is continuous.

Show that

$$f'(x) = - [Fy(x, / (a:))] \cdot (x, / (a:))$$

"If $f(x, y, z)=0$, then $ff - - ff=-1$."

Give a precise meaning to this statement.

Verify that it holds in the example of Clapeyron's ideal gas equation

$$P'V \blacklozenge$$

$$\text{————} = \text{const}$$

T

and in the general case of a function of three variables.

Write the analogous statement for the relation $/(a?1, \dots, \#m)=0$ among m variables. Verify that it is correct.

Show that the roots of the equation

$$z^n + c \setminus z^{n-1} H b Cn = 0$$

are smooth functions of the coefficients, at least when they are all distinct.

5.4 SOME COROLLARIES OF THE IMPLICIT FUNCTION THEOREM

THE INVERSE FUNCTION THEOREM

Definition. A mapping $f: U \rightarrow V$, where U and V are open subsets of \mathbb{R}^m , is a p -diffeomorphism or a diffeomorphism of smoothness p ($p=0, 1, \dots$), if

1) $f \in C^p(U; V)$,

2) f is a bijection;

3) $f^{-1} \in C^q(V; U)$.

A 0-diffeomorphism is known as a homeomorphism.

As a rule, in this book we shall consider only the smooth case, that is, the case $p \in \mathbb{N}$ or $p = \infty$.

The basic idea of the following frequently used theorem is that if the differential of a mapping is invertible at a point, then the mapping itself is invertible in some neighborhood of the point.

Theorem. (Inverse function theorem). If a mapping $f: G \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$ of a domain $G \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ is such that

1° $f \in C^p, W(G; \mathbb{R}^m), p > 1$,

2° $f(x_0) = y_0$ at $x_0 \in G$,

3° $f'(x_0)$ is invertible,

then there exists a neighborhood $U(x_0) \subset G$ of x_0 and a neighborhood $V(y_0)$ of y_0 such that $f: U(x_0) \rightarrow V(y_0)$ is a p -diffeomorphism. Moreover, if $x \in U(x_0)$ and $y = f(x) \in V(y_0)$, then

$(f^{-1})'(y) = (f'(x))^{-1}$

Proof. We rewrite the relation $y = f(x)$ in the form

$F(x, y) = f(x) - y = 0$.

The function $F(x, y) = f(x) - y$ is defined for $x \in G$ and $y \in M$, that is it is defined in the neighborhood $G \times M$ of the point $(x_0, y_0) \in G \times M$.

We wish to solve with respect to x in some neighborhood of (x_0, y_0) - By hypotheses 1°, 2°, 3° of the theorem the mapping $F(x, y)$ has the property that

$$F \in C^k(G \times M; M), k \geq 1,$$

$$F(x_0, y_0) = 0,$$

$$K(x_0, y_0) = f'(x_0) \text{ is invertible.}$$

By the implicit function theorem there exist a neighborhood $I_x \times I_y$ of (x_0, y_0) and a mapping $g \in C^k(I_y; I_x)$ such that

$$f(x) - y = 0 \iff x = g(y)$$

for any point $(x, y) \in I_x \times I_y$ and

$$g'(y) = - [K(x, y)]^{-1} y \quad \blacksquare$$

In the present case

$$F'_x(x, y) = f'(x), F'_y(x, y) = -E,$$

where E is the identity matrix; therefore

$$g'(y) = (f'(x))^{-1} \cdot$$

If we set $V \subset I_y$ and $U = g(V)$, relation shows that the mappings $f: U \rightarrow V$ and $g: V \rightarrow U$ are mutually inverse, that is, $g = f^{-1}$ on V .

Since $V \subset I_y$, it follows that V is a neighborhood of y_0 - This means that under hypotheses 1°, 2°, and 3° the image $y_0 = f(x_0)$ of $x_0 \in G$, which is an interior point of G , is an interior point of the image $f(G)$ of G . By formula the matrix $g'(y_0)$ is invertible. Therefore the mapping $g: V \rightarrow U$ has properties 1°, 2°, and 3° relative to the domain V and the point $y_0 \in V$.

Hence by what has already been proved $x_0 = g(y_0)$ is an interior point of $U = g(V)$.

Notes

Since by hypotheses 1°, 2°, and 3° obviously hold at any point $y \in V$, any point $x=g(y)$ is an interior point of U . Thus U is an open (and obviously even connected) neighborhood of $x_0 \in M$.

We have now verified that the mapping $f: U \rightarrow V$ satisfies all the conditions. The inverse function theorem is very often used in converting from one coordinate system to another. The simplest version of such a change of coordinates was studied in analytic geometry and linear algebra and has the form

$$\begin{pmatrix} y^1 \\ \dots \\ y^m \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a_1^1 & \dots & a_m^1 \\ \dots & \dots & \dots \\ a_1^m & \dots & a_m^m \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x^1 \\ \dots \\ x^m \end{pmatrix}$$

or, in compact notation, $y_i = a_{ij} x_j$.

This linear transformation $A: \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$ has an inverse $A^{-1}: \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$ defined on the entire space \mathbb{R}^m if and only if the matrix (a^j_i) is invertible, that is, $\det(a^j_i) \neq 0$.

The inverse function theorem is a local version of this proposition, based on the fact that in a neighborhood of a point a smooth mapping behaves approximately like its differential at the point.

Example. Polar coordinates. The mapping $f: \mathbb{R}^+ \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$ of the half-plane $\mathbb{R}^+ = \{(p, \theta) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid p > 0\}$ onto the plane \mathbb{R}^2 defined by the formula

$$x = p \cos \theta,$$

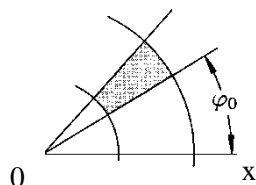
$$y = p \sin \theta,$$

The Jacobian of this mapping, as can be easily computed, is p , that is, it is nonzero in a neighborhood of any point (p, θ) , where $p > 0$. Therefore formulas are locally invertible and hence locally the numbers p and θ can be taken as new coordinates of the point previously determined by the Cartesian coordinates x and y .

The coordinates (p, θ) are a well known system of curvilinear coordinates on the plane - polar coordinates. Their geometric interpretation is shown

in Figure. We note that by the periodicity of the functions $\cos \theta$ and $\sin \theta$ the mapping is only locally a diffeomorphism when $\rho > 0$; it is not bijective on the entire plane. That is the reason that the change from Cartesian to polar coordinates always involves a choice of a branch of the argument θ (that is, an indication of its range of variation).

Y 7r 2



Polar coordinates (ρ, θ) in three-dimensional space M^3 are known as spherical coordinates. They are connected with Cartesian coordinates by the formulas

$$z = \rho \cos \theta,$$

$$y = \rho \sin \theta \sin \phi,$$

$$x = \rho \sin \theta \cos \phi.$$

The geometric meaning of the parameters ρ ,

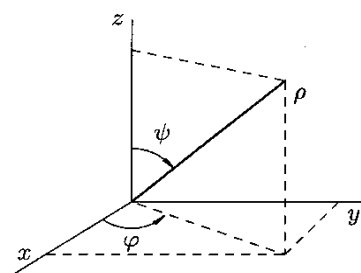


Fig. 8.6.

The Jacobian of the mapping is $\rho^2 \sin \theta$, and so by Theorem the mapping is invertible in a neighborhood of each point (ρ, θ, ϕ) at which $\rho > 0$ and $\sin \theta \neq 0$.

The sets where $\rho = \text{const}$, $\theta = \text{const}$, or $\phi = \text{const}$ in (x, y, z) -space obviously correspond to a spherical surface (a sphere of radius ρ), a

Notes

halfplane passing through the z -axis, and the surface of a cone whose axis is the z -axis respectively.

Thus in passing from coordinates (x, y, z) to coordinates (p, θ, ϕ) , for example, the spherical surface and the conical surface are flattened; they correspond to pieces of the planes $p = \text{const}$ and $\theta = \text{const}$ respectively. We observed a similar phenomenon in the two dimensional case, where an arc of a circle in the (x, y) -plane corresponded to a closed interval on the line in the plane with coordinates (p, θ) . Please note that this is a local straightening.

In the m -dimensional case polar coordinates are introduced by the relations

$$x_1 = p \cos \theta_1,$$

$$x_2 = p \sin \theta_1 \cos \theta_2,$$

$$\dots x_m = p \sin \theta_1 \sin \theta_2 \dots \sin \theta_{m-2} \cos \theta_{m-1},$$

$$x_{m+1} = p \sin \theta_1 \sin \theta_2 \dots \sin \theta_{m-2} \sin \theta_{m-1}.$$

and by Theorem it is also locally invertible everywhere where this Jacobian is nonzero.

Example. The general idea of local rectification of curves. New coordinates are usually introduced for the purpose of simplifying the analytic expression for the objects that occur in a problem and making them easier to visualize in the new notation.

Suppose for example, a curve in the plane \mathbb{R}^2 is defined by the equation

$$F(x, y) = 0.$$

Let that F is a smooth function, that the point (x_0, y_0) lies on the curve, that is, $F(x_0, y_0) = 0$, and that this point is not a critical point of F . For example, suppose $F_y(x, y) \neq 0$.

Let us try to choose coordinates (u, v) , so that in these coordinates a closed interval of a coordinate line, for example, the line $v = 0$, corresponds to an arc of this curve.

We set

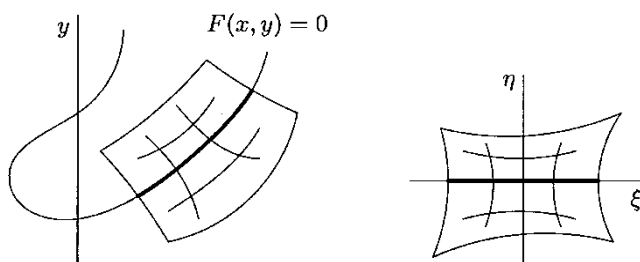
$\langle = X - x_0, T \rangle = F(x, y)$.

The Jacobi matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ F'_x & F'_y \end{pmatrix} (x, y)$$

of this transformation has as its determinant the number $F'_y(x, y)$, which by assumption is nonzero at (x_0, y_0) . Then by Theorem this mapping is a diffeomorphism of a neighborhood of (x_0, y_0) onto a neighborhood of the point $(\langle =, \langle = \rangle) = (0, 0)$. Hence, inside this neighborhood, the numbers $\langle =$ & $\langle =$ can be taken as new coordinates of points lying in a neighborhood of (x_0, y_0) .

In the new coordinates, the curve obviously has the equation $\langle = = 0$, and in this sense we have indeed achieved a local rectification.



Local Reduction of a Smooth Mapping to Canonical Form

In this subsection we shall consider only one question of this type. To be specific, we shall exhibit a canonical form to which one can locally reduce any smooth mapping of constant rank by means of a suitable choice of coordinates.

We recall that the rank of a mapping $f: U \rightarrow W^1$ of a domain $U \subset M^m$ at a point $x \in U$ is the rank of the linear transformation tangent to it at the point, that is, the rank of the matrix $f'(x)$. The rank of a mapping at a point is usually denoted $\text{rank } f(x)$.

Theorem (The rank theorem). Let $f: U \rightarrow M^n$ be a mapping defined in a neighborhood $U \subset M^m$ of a point $x_0 \in M^m$. If $f \in C^p(U; \mathbb{R}^n)$, $p > 1$, and the mapping f has the same rank k at every point $x \in U$, then there

Notes

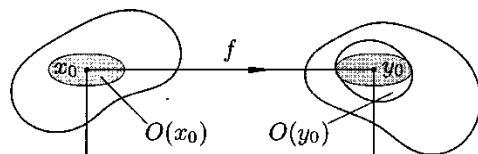
exist neighborhoods $O(x_0)$ of x_0 and $O(y_0)$ of $y_0=f(x_0)$ and diffeomorphisms

$u=\varphi(x)$, $v=\psi(y)$ of those neighborhoods, of class C^p such that the mapping $v=\psi \circ f \circ \varphi^{-1}$ has the coordinate representation

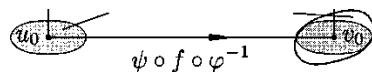
$$(u_1, \dots, u_k, \dots, u_m) \xrightarrow{v \circ f \circ \varphi^{-1}} (v_1, \dots, v_n) = (u_1, \dots, u_k, 0, \dots, 0)$$

in the neighborhood $O(u_0) = \varphi^{-1}(O(x_0))$ of $u_0 = \varphi(x_0)$.

In other words, the theorem asserts (observe Fig. 8.8) that one can choose coordinates (u_1, \dots, u_m) in place of (x_1, \dots, x_m) and (v_1, \dots, v_n) in place of (y_1, \dots, y_n) in such a way that locally the mapping has the form in the new coordinates, that is, the canonical form for a linear transformation of rank k .



$$O(u_0) = \varphi^{-1}(O(x_0))$$



5.5 DIFFERENTIAL CALCULUS IN SEVERAL VARIABLES

We write the coordinate representation

$$y_1 = f_1(x_1, \dots, x_m),$$

$$y_k = f_k(x_1, \dots, x_m),$$

$$y_{k+1} = f_{k+1}(x_1, \dots, x_m),$$

$$y_n = f_n(x_1, \dots, x_m)$$

of the mapping $f: U \rightarrow M^m$, which is defined in a neighborhood of the point

$x_0 \in M^m$. In order to avoid relabeling the coordinates and the neighborhood we shall let that at every point $x \in U$, the principal minor of order k the upper left corner of the matrix $f'(x)$ is nonzero.

Let us consider the mapping defined in a neighborhood U of x_0 by the equalities

$$u_1 = f_1(x_1, \dots, x_m) = f_1(x_1, \dots, x_m)$$

$$\dots$$

$$u_{k+1} = f_{k+1}(x_1, \dots, x_m) = x_{k+1},$$

$$\dots$$

The Jacobi matrix of this mapping has the form

$$\begin{pmatrix} df_1 & \dots & df_1 \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ df_k & \dots & df_k \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ dx_1 & \dots & dx_k \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ dx_{k+1} & \dots & dx_{k+1} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ dx_1 & \dots & dx_1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$df_1$$

$$dx_1$$

$$df_k$$

$$dx_1$$

$$dx_{k+1}$$

$$dx_1$$

and by assumption its determinant is nonzero in U .

By the inverse function theorem, the mapping $u = \langle p(x) \rangle$ is a diffeomorphism of smoothness p of some neighborhood $O(x_0) \subset U$ of x_0 onto a neighborhood $O(u_0) = (p(O(x_0)))$ of $u_0 = \langle p(x_0) \rangle$.

$$y^* = f_n \circ (p^{-1} \circ \langle \cdot \rangle) = \dots, u_m).$$

Since the mapping $(p^{-1} : O(u_0) \rightarrow O(x_0))$ has maximal rank m at each point $u \in O(u_0)$, and the mapping $f: O(x_0) \rightarrow M^m$ has rank k at every point $x \in O(x_0)$? It follows, as is known from linear algebra, that the matrix $g'(u) = f' \circ (p^{-1} \circ \langle \cdot \rangle)$ has rank k at every point $u \in O(u_0)$.

Notes

Direct computation of the Jacobi matrix of the mapping (8.122) yields

$$\begin{aligned} & / \\ & d u_{k+1} \\ & d u_m / \\ & d g_j \end{aligned}$$

Hence at each point $u \in G^{-1}(u_0)$ we obtain $\frac{\partial g_i}{\partial u_j}(u) = 0$ for $i = k + 1, \dots, m$;

or

$j = k + 1, \dots, n$. Assuming that the neighborhood $O(u_0)$ is convex (which can be achieved by shrinking $O(u_0)$ to a ball with center at u_0 , for example) we can conclude from this that the functions g_i , $j = k + 1, \dots, n$, really are independent of the variables u_1, \dots, u_m .

After this decisive observation, we can rewrite the mapping as

$$\begin{aligned} y_k &= u_k, \\ y_{k+1} &= g_{k+1}(u_1, \dots, u_k), \\ &\vdots \\ y_n &= g_n(u_1, \dots, u_k). \end{aligned}$$

At this point we can exhibit the mapping \mathcal{I}_p . We set

$$\begin{aligned} v_1 &= y_1 = u_1, \\ &\vdots \\ v_k &= y_k = u_k, \\ v_{k+1} &= y_{k+1} - g_{k+1}(y_1, \dots, y_k) = \mathcal{I}_{k+1}(y), \\ &\vdots \\ v_n &= y_n - g_n(y_1, \dots, y_k) =: \mathcal{I}_n(y). \end{aligned}$$

It is clear from the construction of the functions g_i ($j = k + 1, \dots, n$) that the mapping is defined in a neighborhood of y_0 and belongs to class C^1 in that neighborhood.

The Jacobi matrix of the mapping has the form

$$d y_1$$

dyk

Its determinant equals 1, and so by Theorem 1 the mapping i/i is a diffeomorphism of smoothness p of some neighborhood $O(y_0)$ of $y_0 \in G \subset \mathbb{R}^m$ onto a neighborhood $O(v_0) = i(O(x_0))$ of $v_0 \in G \subset \mathbb{R}^m$.

Comparing relations, we observe that in a neighborhood $O(u_0) \subset O(u_0)$ of u_0 so small that $g(O(u_0)) \subset O(y_0)$ the mapping $t/j_0 \circ \alpha^{-1} : O(u_0) \rightarrow M_n$ is a mapping of smoothness p from this neighborhood onto some neighborhood $O(v_0) \subset O(v_0)$ of $v_0 \in G$ and that it has the canonical form

$$v_n = 0.$$

Setting $p^{-1}(O(u_0)) = O(x_0)$ and $O(y_0) = O(y_0)$ we obtain the

neighborhoods of x_0 and y_0 whose existence is asserted in the theorem. The proof is now complete. Theorem is obviously a local version of the corresponding theorem from linear algebra.

In connection with the proof just given of Theorem we make the following remarks, which will be useful in what follows.

Remark. If the rank of the mapping $f : U \rightarrow M_n$ is n at every point of the original neighborhood $U \subset M_m$, then the point $y_0 = f(x_0)$, where $x_0 \in U$, is an interior point of $f(U)$, that is, $f(U)$ contains a neighborhood of this point.

Proof. Indeed, from what was just proved, the mapping $t/j_0 \circ \alpha^{-1} : O(u_0) \rightarrow$

$O(v_0)$ has the form

$O(v_0)$ has the form

$$(u_1, \dots, u_n, \dots, u_m) \mapsto v = (v_1, \dots, v_n) = (u_1, \dots, u_n),$$

in this case, and so the image of a neighborhood of $u_0 = f(x_0)$ contains some neighborhood of $v_0 = \alpha^{-1}(y_0) \in f(U)$.

But the mappings $p : O(x_0) \rightarrow O(u_0)$ and $ip : O(y_0) \rightarrow O(v_0)$ are diffeomorphisms, and therefore they map interior points to interior points. Writing the original mapping f as $f = \alpha^{-1} \circ (V \circ \alpha) \circ p^{-1}$ we

Notes

conclude that $y_0 = f(x_0)$ is an interior point of the image of a neighborhood of x_0

Remark. If the rank of the mapping $f : U \rightarrow W$ is k at every point of a neighborhood U and $k < n$, then in some neighborhood of $x_0 \in U \subset M$ the following $n - k$ relations hold:

$$f(x_1, \dots, x_m) = g_i(f_1(x_1, \dots, x_m), \dots, f_k$$

$$(i = k + 1, \dots, n)$$

These relations are written under the assumption we have made that the principal minor of order k of the matrix $f'(x_0)$ is nonzero, that is, the rank k is realized on the set of functions Z_1, \dots, f_k . Otherwise one can relabel the functions f_1, \dots, f_n and again have this situation.

5.6 DIFFERENTIAL CALCULUS IN SEVERAL VARIABLES FUNCTIONAL DEPENDENCE

Definition. A system of continuous functions $f_i(x) = f_i(x_1, \dots, x_m)$

$(i = 1, \dots, n)$ is functionally independent in a neighborhood of a point $x_0 = (x_1, \dots, x_m)$ if for any continuous function $F(y) = F(y_1, \dots, y_n)$ defined in a neighborhood of $y_0 = (y_1, \dots, y_n) = (f_1(x_0), \dots, f_n(x_0)) = f(x_0)$, the relation

$$F(f_1(x_1, \dots, x_m), \dots, f_n(x_1, \dots, x_m)) = 0$$

is possible at all points of a neighborhood of x_0 only when $F(y_1, \dots, y_n) = 0$

in a neighborhood of y_0 .

The linear independence studied in algebra is independence with respect to linear relations

$$F(y_1, \dots, y_n) = X_1 y_1 + \dots + X_n y_n$$

If a system is not functionally independent, it is said to be functionally dependent. When vectors are linearly dependent, one of them obviously is

a linear combination of the others. A similar situation holds in the relation of functional dependence of a system of smooth functions.

Proposition. If a system $f_1(x_1, \dots, x_m)$ ($i=1, \dots, n$) of smooth

functions defined on a neighborhood $U(x_0)$ of the point $x_0 \in M^m$ is such that the rank of the matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} df_1 \\ \vdots \\ df_n \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} dx_1 \\ \vdots \\ dx_m \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} dx_1 \\ \vdots \\ dx_m \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} df_1 \\ \vdots \\ df_n \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} dx_1 \\ \vdots \\ dx_m \end{pmatrix}$$

is equal to the same number k at every point $x \in U$, then

when $k=n$, the system is functionally independent in a neighborhood of x_0 ;

when $k < n$, there exist a neighborhood of x_0 and k functions of the system, say f_1, \dots, f_k such that the other $n - k$ functions can be represented

as

$$f_i(x_1, \dots, x_m) = g_i(f_1(x_1, \dots, x_m), f_k(x_1, \dots, x_m))$$

in this neighborhood, where $g_i(y_1, \dots, y_k)$, ($i=k+1, \dots, n$) are smooth functions defined in a neighborhood of $y_0 = (f_1(x_0), \dots, f_k(x_0))$ and depending only on k coordinates of the variable point $y = (y_1, \dots, y_n)$.

Proof In fact, if $k=n$, then by Remark 1 after the rank theorem, the image of a neighborhood of the point x_0 under the mapping

can hold in a neighborhood of x_0 only if

$$F(y_1, \dots, y_n) = 0$$

in a neighborhood of y_0 . This proves assertion.

If $k < n$ and the rank k of the mapping is realized on the functions Z_1, \dots, Z_k , then by Remark after the rank theorem, there exists a neighborhood of $y_0 = f(x_0)$ and $n - k$ functions $g_i(y) = g_i(y_1, \dots, y_k)$

Notes

$(i=k+1, \dots, n)$, defined on that neighborhood, having the same order of smoothness as the functions of the original system, and such that relations hold in some neighborhood of x_q .

We have now shown that if $k < n$ there exist $n - k$ special functions $f_{k+1}(y) = y_{k+1}, \dots, f_n(y) = y_n$ that establish the relations between the functions of the system $f_1, \dots, f_k, \dots, f_n$ in a neighborhood of the point x_q .

5.7 LOCAL RESOLUTION OF A DIFFEOMORPHISM INTO A COMPOSITION OF ELEMENTARY ONES

In this subsection we shall show how, using the inverse function theorem, one can represent a diffeomorphic mapping locally as a composition of diffeomorphisms, each of which changes only one coordinate.

Definition. A diffeomorphism $g : U \rightarrow M^m$ of an open set $U \subset M^m$ will be known elementary if its coordinate representation is

$$y_i = x_i^*, \quad i \neq j,$$

$$y_j = g_j(x),$$

that is, under the diffeomorphism $g : U \rightarrow M^m$ only one coordinate of the point being mapped is changed.

Proposition. If $f : G \rightarrow M^m$ is a diffeomorphism of an open set $G \subset M^m$, then for any point $x_q \in G$ there is a neighborhood of the point in which the representation $f = g_1 \circ \dots \circ g_n$ holds, where g_1, \dots, g_n are elementary diffeomorphisms.

Proof We shall verify this by induction.

If the original mapping f is itself elementary, the proposition holds trivially for it.

Let that the proposition holds for diffeomorphisms that alter at most $(k - 1)$ coordinates, where $k - 1 < n$. Now consider a diffeomorphism $f: G \rightarrow M_m$

that alters k coordinates:

$$y_1 = f(x_1, \dots, x_m)$$

$$y_m = x_{k+1}$$

We have let it be the first k coordinates that are changed, which can be achieved by linear changes of variable. Hence this assumption causes no loss in generality.

Since f is a diffeomorphism, its Jacobi matrix $f'(x)$ is nondegenerate at each point, for

$$\det(f'(x)) \neq 0$$

Let us fix $x_0 \in G$ and compute the determinant of $f'(x_0)$:

minor of order $k - 1$ is nonzero. Now consider the auxiliary mapping $g: G \rightarrow M_m$

defined by the equalities

$$y_1 = f(x_1, \dots, x_m),$$

$$y_k = x_{k+1}$$

$$y_m = x_m$$

$$y_{k+1} = x_{k+2}$$

Since the Jacobian

$$\det \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\partial y_1}{\partial x_1} & \dots & \frac{\partial y_1}{\partial x_m} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \frac{\partial y_{k-1}}{\partial x_1} & \dots & \frac{\partial y_{k-1}}{\partial x_m} \end{pmatrix} \neq 0$$

&e

the mapping $g: G \rightarrow M_m$ is nonzero at $x_0 \in G$, the mapping g is a diffeomorphism in some neighborhood of x_0 .

Then, in some neighborhood of $u = g(x_0)$ the mapping inverse to g , $x = g^{-1}(u)$, is defined, making it possible to introduce new coordinates (u_1, \dots, u_m) in a neighborhood of x_0 .

Notes

Let $h = f \circ g^{-1}$. In other words, the mapping $y = h(u)$ is the mapping $y = f(x)$ written in $^{\wedge}$ -coordinates. The mapping ϕ , being the composition of diffeomorphisms, is a diffeomorphism of some neighborhood of u_0 .

Its coordinate expression obviously has the form

$$y_k = f \circ g^{-1}(u) = u_k,$$

$$y_{k+1} = f \circ g^{-1}(u) = u_{k+1},$$

$$y_k = f \circ g^{-1},$$

$$y_{k+1} = U_{k+1},$$

$$y_{l+1} = U_m,$$

that is, h is an elementary diffeomorphism.

But $\phi = h \circ g$, and by the induction hypothesis the mapping g defined can be resolved into a composition of elementary diffeomorphisms.

Thus, the diffeomorphism ϕ , which alters k coordinates, can also be resolved into a composition of elementary diffeomorphisms in a neighborhood of x_0 , which completes the induction.

5.8 MORSE'S THEOREM

This same circle of ideas contains an intrinsically beautiful Theorem of Morse on the local reduction of smooth real-valued functions to canonical form in a neighborhood of a nondegenerate critical point. This Theorem is also important in applications.

Definition. Let x_0 be a critical point of the function $f \in C^2(U; \mathbb{R})$ defined in a neighborhood U of this point.

The critical point x_0 is a nondegenerate critical point of f if the Hessian $d^2 f$

of the function at that point (that is, the matrix $H_f(x_0)$ formed from

$\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x_i \partial x_j}(x_0)$)

the second-order partial derivatives) has a nonzero determinant.

If x_0 is a critical point of the function, that is, $\nabla f(x_0) = 0$, then by Taylor's formula

$$f(x) - f(x_0) = \sum_{i=1}^m dx_i \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_i}(x_0) + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i,j=1}^m dx_i dx_j \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x_i \partial x_j}(x_0) + o(\|x - x_0\|^2)$$

'id

Morse's Theorem asserts that one can make a local change of coordinates $x = g(y)$ such that the function will have the form

$$f(g(y)) - f(x_0) = \sum_{i=1}^k (y_i)^2 - \sum_{j=1}^l (y_{k+j})^2 + \dots + (y_m)^2$$

when expressed in y -coordinates.

If the remainder term $o(\|x - x_0\|^2)$ were not present on the right-hand side of Eq. that is, the difference $f(x) - f(x_0)$ were a simple quadratic form, then, as is known from algebra, it could be brought into the indicated canonical form by a linear transformation. Thus the assertion we are about to prove is a local version of the theorem on reduction of a quadratic form to canonical form. The proof will use the idea of the proof of this algebraic theorem. We shall also rely on the inverse function theorem and the following proposition.

Hadamard's Theorem. Let $f: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be a function of class $C^p(U; \mathbb{R})$, $p > 1$, defined in a convex neighborhood U of the point $0 = (0, \dots, 0) \in \mathbb{R}^m$ and such that $\nabla f(0) = 0$. Then there exist functions $g_i \in C^1(U; \mathbb{R})$

($i=1, \dots, m$) such that the equality

m

$$f(x) - f(0) = \sum_{i=1}^m g_i(x_i) - \sum_{i=1}^m g_i(0)$$

$2=1$

holds in U , and $g_i(0) = J^p f(0)$.

Proof. Equality is essentially another useful expression for Taylor's formula with the integral form of the remainder term. It follows from the equalities

Notes

$$f(x_1, \dots, x_m) = \sum_{i=1}^m a_i x_i^2 + g(x_1, \dots, x_m),$$

$$0 \leq x_i \leq 1$$

if we set

1

$$f(x_1, \dots, x_m) = \sum_{i=1}^m a_i x_i^2 + g(x_1, \dots, x_m).$$

0

The fact that $f(x) = \sum_{i=1}^m a_i x_i^2 + g(x_1, \dots, x_m)$ is obvious, and it is also not difficult to verify that $f \in C^p(U; \mathbb{R})$. However, we shall not undertake the verification just now, since we shall later give a general rule for differentiating an integral depending on a parameter, from which the property we need for the functions g_i will follow immediately.

Thus, up to this verification, Hadamard's formula is proved.

Morse's Theorem. If $f : G \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is a function of class $C^p(G; \mathbb{R})$ defined on an open set $G \subset \mathbb{R}^m$ and $x_0 \in G$ is a nondegenerate critical point of that function, then there exists a diffeomorphism $g : V \rightarrow U$ of some neighborhood of the origin 0 in \mathbb{R}^m onto a neighborhood U of x_0 such that if $f \circ g^{-1}(y) = f(x_0) - [(y_1)^2 + \dots + (y_k)^2] + [(y_{k+1})^2 + \dots + (y_m)^2]$ for all $y \in V$.

Proof By linear changes of variable we can reduce the problem to the case when $x_0 = 0$ and $f(x_0) = 0$, and from now on we shall let that these conditions hold.

Since $x_0 = 0$ is a critical point of f , we have $f'(0) = 0$ in formula (1), $(i=1, \dots, m)$. Then, also by Hadamard's Theorem,

m

$$f(x_1, \dots, x_m) =$$

$$\sum_{i=1}^k -x_i^2 + \sum_{i=k+1}^m x_i^2 + h(x_1, \dots, x_m)$$

where h are smooth functions in a neighborhood of 0 and consequently

m

$$f(x_1, \dots, x_m) = \sum_{i,j=1}^m h_{ij}(x_1, \dots, x_m) x_i x_j.$$

$$i, j=1$$

By making the substitution $h_{ij} = \frac{1}{2}(h_{ij} + h_{ji})$ if necessary, we can let $h_{ij} = h_{ji}$. We remark also that, by the uniqueness of the Taylor expansion, the continuity of the functions h^{α} implies that $h_{ij}(0) = h_{ji}(0)$ and

$$u^T H u$$

hence the matrix $H(0)$ is nondegenerate.

The function f has now been written in a manner that resembles a quadratic form, and we wish, so to speak, to reduce it to diagonal form. As in the classical case, we proceed by induction.

Let that there exist coordinates x_1, \dots, x_m in a neighborhood U of $0 \in \mathbb{R}^m$, that is, a diffeomorphism $x = p(u)$, such that

m

$$f \circ p^{-1}(u) = \sum_{i=1}^r \lambda_i u_i^2 \pm \dots \pm \sum_{i=r+1}^m \mu_i u_i^2 + o(\|u\|^2) \quad \text{for } u \in U,$$

$$i, j=r$$

in the coordinates u_1, \dots, u_m , where $r > 1$ and $\lambda_j = \mu_j$.

We observe that relation holds for $r=1$, as one can observe from, where $h_{ij} = h_{ji}$.

m

By the hypothesis of the Theorem the quadratic form $\sum_{i,j=1}^m h_{ij}(0) x_i x_j$ is

$$i, j=1$$

nondegenerate, that is, $\det(h_{ij}(0)) \neq 0$. The change of variable $x = p(u)$ is carried out by a diffeomorphism, so that $\det H(0) \neq 0$. But then the matrix

m

Notes

of the quadratic form $\pm(u_1)^2 \pm \dots \pm(u_{r-1})^2 + \sum_{i,j=r}^m u_i u_j H_{ij}(0)$ obtained from

$$i, j=r$$

the matrix $\{H_{ij}(0)\}$ through right-multiplication by the matrix $(p'(0))$ and left-

multiplication by the transpose of $y'(0)$ is also nondegenerate.

Consequently,

at least one of the numbers $H_{ij}(0)$ ($i, j=r, \dots, m$) is nonzero. By a linear

m

change of variable we can bring the form $\sum_{i,j=r}^m u_i u_j H_{ij}(0)$ to diagonal form,

$$i, j=r$$

and so we can let that $H_{rr}(0) > 0$ in Eq.(8.133). By the continuity of the functions $H_{ij}(u)$ the inequality $H_{rr}(u) > 0$ will also hold in some

neighborhood of $u=0$.

Let us set $(u_1, \dots, u_m) = y \cdot J \cdot H_{rr}(u)$. Then the function y belongs to the class C^k in some neighborhood $U \subset U$ of $u=0$. We now change to coordinates (v_1, \dots, v_m) by the formulas

$$\langle 8-134 \rangle$$

The Jacobian of the transformation at $u=0$ is obviously equal to $J \cdot H_{rr}(0) > 0$ that is, it is nonzero. Then by the inverse function theorem we can assert that in some neighborhood $U_s \subset U$ of $u=0$ the mapping $v = y(u)$ defined is a diffeomorphism of class $C^k(U_s; M^m)$ and therefore the variables (v_1, \dots, v_m) can indeed serve as coordinates of points in U_s .

We now separate off in all terms

m

$$\sum_{i,j=r+1}^m u_i u_j H_{ij}(u) + \sum_{i=r+1}^m u_i v_j H_{ij}(u),$$

$$j=r+1$$

containing u . In the expression for the sum of these terms we have used the fact that $H_{ij} = H_{ji}$.

Comparing we observe that we can rewrite in the form

$$\pm \sum_{i,j=1}^r v_i v_j H_{ij}(u_1, \dots, u_m)$$

$r \geq 1$

The ambiguous sign \pm appears in front of $\sum v_i v_j H_{ij}$ because $H_{rr} = \pm \sum_{i=1}^{r-1} v_i^2$ the positive sign being taken if $H_{rr} > 0$ and the negative sign if $H_{rr} < 0$.

Thus, after the substitution $v = \text{ip}(u)$, the expression becomes the equality

r

$$\sum_{i,j=1}^r [\pm (w_i)^2] + \sum_{i,j=1}^r v_i v_j H_{ij}(u_1, \dots, u_m),$$

$2=1 \quad i, j \geq r$

where H_{ij} are new smooth functions that are symmetric with respect to the indices i and j . The mapping $(\text{poif}; "1$ is a diffeomorphism. Thus the induction from $r - 1$ to r is now complete, and Morse's Theorem is proved.

Check your Progress-1

Discuss Transition To The Case Of A Relation

Discuss Morse's Theorem

5.9 LET US SUM UP

In this unit we have discussed the definition and example of Transition To The Case Of A Relation, The Implicit Function Theorem, Some Corollaries Of The Implicit Function Theorem, The Inverse Function Theorem, Differential Calculus In Several Variables, Differential Calculus In Several Variables Functional Dependence, Local Resolution Of A Diffeomorphism Into A Composition Of Elementary Ones, Morse's Theorem

5.10 KEYWORDS

1. Transition To The Case Of A Relation: The following proposition is a simple generalization of Proposition to the case of a relation $F(x_1, \dots, x_m, y) = 0$

2. Some Corollaries Of The Implicit Function Theorem Definition. A mapping $f: U \rightarrow V$, where U and V are open subsets of \mathbb{R}^m , is a p -diffeomorphism or a diffeomorphism of smoothness p ($p=0, 1, \dots$)

3. The Inverse Function Theorem: We write the coordinate representation $y = f(x_1, \dots, x_m)$

4. Differential Calculus In Several Variables Functional Dependence Definition. A system of continuous functions $f(x) = (f_1(x), \dots, f_m(x))$

5. Morse's Theorem This same circle of ideas contains an intrinsically beautiful Theorem of Morse on the local reduction of smooth real-valued functions to canonical form in a neighborhood of a nondegenerate critical point

5.11 QUESTIONS FOR REVIEW

Explain Transition To The Case Of A Relation

Explain Morse's Theorem

5.12 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

Transition To The Case Of A Relation

(answer for Check your Progress-1

Q)

Morse's Theorem

(answer for Check your Progress-1

Q)

5.13 REFERENCES

- Several Variables
- Function of Variables
- System of Equation
- Function of Real Variables
- Real Several Variables
- Elementary Variables

UNIT - 6: TAYLOR'S THEOREM, MAXIMA AND MINIMA

STRUCTURE

6.0 Objectives

6.1 Introduction

6.2 Taylor's Theorem, Maxima And Minima

6.3 Application To Maxima And Minima

6.4 Surfaces In R^n And The Theory Of Extrema With Constraint

6.5 The Tangent Space

6.6 Differential Calculus In Several Variables

6.7 Extrema With Constraint

6.8 Surfaces In R^n And Constrained Extrema

6.9 Some Geometric Images Connected With Functions Of Several Variables

6.10 Let Us Sum Up

6.11 Keywords

6.12 Questions For Review

6.13 Answers To Check Your Progress

6.14 References

6.0 OBJECTIVES

After studying this unit, you should be able to:

Learn, Understand about Taylor's Theorem, Maxima And Minima

Learn, Understand about Application To Maxima And Minima

Learn, Understand about Surfaces In R^n And The Theory Of Extrema With Constraint

Learn, Understand about The Tangent Space

Learn, Understand about Differential Calculus In Several Variables

Learn, Understand about Extrema With Constraint

Learn, Understand about Surfaces In R^n And Constrained Extrema

Learn, Understand about Some Geometric Images Connected With Functions Of Several Variables

6.1 INTRODUCTION

In mathematics advanced calculus whose aim is to provide a firm logical foundation of analysis of calculus and a course in linear algebra treats analysis in one variable & analysis in several variables

Taylor's Theorem, Maxima And Minima, Application To Maxima And Minima, Surfaces In R^n And The Theory Of Extrema With Constraint, The Tangent Space, Differential Calculus In Several Variables, Extrema With Constraint, Surfaces In R^n And Constrained Extrema, Some Geometric Images Connected With Functions Of Several Variables

6.2 TAYLOR'S THEOREM, MAXIMA & MINIMA

TAYLOR'S THEOREM

This is somewhat complicated, and the longest proof in either content here to carry the expansion out one more term than thus adding a third derivative and discussing the resulting expression. It is

$$f(x) = f(x_0) + Df(x_0)(x - X_0) + 2 D^2 f(x_0)(x - x_0, x - x_0) \\ + 3 D^3 f(c)(x - x_0, x - x_0, x - X_0)$$

Notes

The last term with $D^3f(c)$, is known the "remainder term". Here c is a point on the line segment between x_0 and x . From the last term that $D^3f(c): \mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$.

There are 3^n

third derivatives, $f_{abc}(c)$. Thus, they won't fit into a square matrix. We will denote these derivatives by $f_{abc}(c)$ where $a, b,$ and c are each one of x or y . The third derivative term when $n=2$, and " x " is $(x - x_0)$, turns out to be

$$3f_{xxx}(c)(x - x_0)^3 + 3f_{xxy}(c)(x - x_0)^2(y - y_0) + 3f_{xyy}(c)(x - x_0)(y - y_0)^2 + f_{yyy}(c)(y - y_0)^3.$$

Can you observe what the third order derivative would be when $n=3$?

What about the fourth derivative term for $n=2$ and $n=3$?

MAXIMA AND MINIMA

Positive definite quadratic forms.

A quadratic form is a function $Q: \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ of the form

$$Q(u) = u^T A u$$

for some symmetric $n \times n$ matrix A . The relevance of this to Taylor's Theorem is observed by looking at equations.

Definition A symmetric matrix A is known "positive definite" if $Q(u) > 0$ for every $u \neq 0$ in \mathbb{R}^n .

There are two particularly useful criteria for determining if A is positive definite. These are from linear algebra, and won't be proved here.

Theorem A symmetric $n \times n$ matrix A is positive definite if either of the following

conditions holds:

All eigenvalues of A are positive

All n "upper left" sub determinants of A are positive.

An upper left sub determinant is one formed by deleting between zero and n of the last rows and columns of A . This will be illustrated in class.

If A is a symmetric matrix and $-A$ is positive definite, then A is known negative definite.

6.3 APPLICATION TO MAXIMA AND MINIMA

The equation above allows us to determine criteria guaranteeing that a point

x_0 is a local maximum or local minimum for the function f . To apply it, we must let that $f \in C^2$. There cannot be a local maximum at x_0 unless $Df(x_0) = 0$, for otherwise there is a nonzero directional derivative in some direction e , which means that

$$d \sim r, f(x_0 + te) |_{t=0} = 0; dt$$

and so there are larger values of f either for t positive or t negative, and $|t|$ small.

Definition x_0 is known a "critical point" of f if $Df(x_0) = 0$.

We then repeat :

$$f(x) = f(x_0) + Df(x_0)(x - x_0) + D^2f(c)(x - x_0, x - x_0).$$

Assuming that $Df(x_0) = 0$, we get

$$f(x) = f(x_0) + (x - x_0)^T D^2f(c)(x - x_0).$$

Theorem If x_0 is a critical point of f and the matrix corresponding to

Notes

$D^2f(x_0)$

is positive definite, then x_0 is a local minimum for f . If $D^2f(x_0)$ is negative definite, then x_0 is a local maximum.

Proof. Suppose that x_0 is a critical point of f and $A := D^2f(x_0)$ is positive definite. Then $e^T A e > 0$ for every unit vector $e \in \mathbb{R}^n$. If u is a nonzero vector in \mathbb{R}^n , then $e = u/\|u\|$ is a unit vector. It follows that A is positive definite if and only if $e^T A e > 0$ for every unit vector e . But the set of all unit vectors in \mathbb{R}^n is a compact set. Hence,

$$\alpha = \min_{\|e\|=1} e^T A e > 0.$$

$$\|e\|=1$$

Because $D^2f(x)$ is continuous, it follows that there is a δ such that if $\|c - x_0\| < \delta$, then $e^T D^2f(c) e > \alpha > 0$ for every unit vector e . Hence $D^2f(c)$ is also positive definite. (i.e. the symmetric matrix corresponding to $D^2f(c)$ is positive definite.)

If $\|x - x_0\| < \delta$ then $\|c - x_0\| < \delta$, because c is on the line segment between x and x_0 . Equation then implies that if $0 < \|x - x_0\| < \delta$, then $f(x) > f(x_0)$. Hence x_0 is a local minimum for f . ■

6.4 SURFACES IN \mathbb{R}^n AND THE THEORY OF EXTREMA WITH CONSTRAINT

To acquire an informal understanding of the theory of extrema with constraint, which is important in applications, it is useful to have some elementary information on surfaces (manifolds) in \mathbb{R}^n .

F_c -DIMENSIONAL SURFACES IN \mathbb{R}^n

Generalizing the concept of a law of motion of a point mass $x = x(t)$, we have previously introduced the concept of a path in \mathbb{R}^n as a continuous

mapping

$r : I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ of an interval $I \subset \mathbb{R}$. The degree of smoothness of the path

was

defined as the degree of smoothness of this mapping. The support $f(I) \subset$

\mathbb{R}^n

of a path can be a rather peculiar set in \mathbb{R}^n , which it would be a great

stretch

to call a curve in some instances. For example, the support of a path

might

be a single point.

Similarly, a continuous or smooth mapping $f : I_k \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ of a k -

dimensional

interval $I_k \subset \mathbb{R}^k$, known a singular k -cell in \mathbb{R}^n , can have as its image

$f(I_k)$

not at all what one would like to call a k -dimensional surface in \mathbb{R}^n . For

example, it might again be simply a point.

In order for a smooth mapping $f : G \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ of a domain $G \subset \mathbb{R}^k$ to

define a k -dimensional geometric figure in \mathbb{R}^n whose points are

described by

k independent parameters $(t_1, \dots, t_k) \in G$, it suffices, as we know from the

preceding section, to require that the rank of the mapping $f : G \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ be

k at

each point $t \in G$ (naturally, $k < n$). In that case the mapping $f : G \rightarrow$

$f(G)$

is locally one-to-one (that is, in a neighborhood of each point $t \in G$).

Indeed, suppose $\text{rank } f'(t_0) = k$ and this rank is realized, for example, on

the first k of the n functions

$$f_1, \dots, f_k,$$

<

$$= f(t_1, \dots, t_k)$$

that define the coordinate expressions for the mapping $f : G \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$.

Then, by the inverse function theorem the variables t_1, \dots, t_k can be ex-

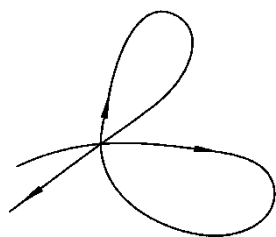
Notes

pressed in terms of x_1, \dots in some neighborhood $U(t_0)$ of t_0 . It follows that the set $f(U(t_0))$ can be written as

$$= \langle p_{k+1}(x_1, \dots, x_k), \dots, x_n \rangle \in \mathbb{R}^n \setminus \{x_1, \dots, x_k\}$$

(that is, it projects in a one-to-one manner onto the coordinate plane of x_1, \dots, x_k), and therefore the mapping $f: U(t_0) \rightarrow f(U(t_0))$ is indeed one-to-one.

However, even the simple example of a smooth one-dimensional path makes it clear that the local injectivity of the mapping $f: G \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$



from the parameter domain G into \mathbb{R}^n is by no means necessarily a global injectivity. The trajectory can have multiple self-intersections, so that if we

wish to define a smooth k -dimensional surface in \mathbb{R}^n and picture it as a set

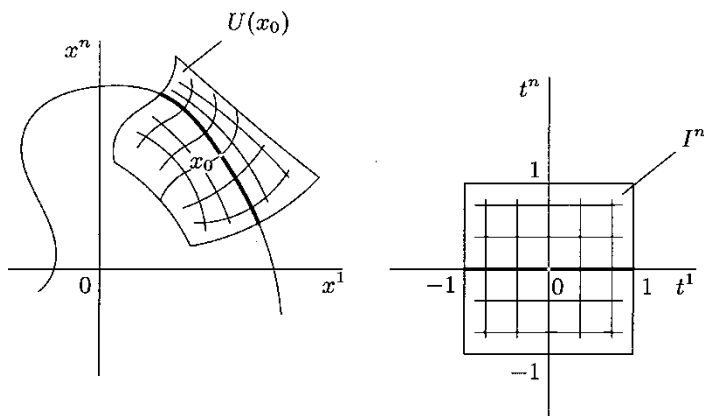
that has the structure of a slightly deformed piece of a k -dimensional plane

(a k -dimensional subspace of \mathbb{R}^n) near each of its points, it is not enough merely to map a canonical piece $G \subset \mathbb{R}^k$ of a k -dimensional plane in a reg-

ular manner into \mathbb{R}^n . It is also necessary to be sure that it happens to be globally imbedded in this space.

Definition . We shall call a set $S \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ a k -dimensional smooth surface in \mathbb{R}^n (or a k -dimensional submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n) if for every point $x_0 \in S$ there exist a neighborhood $U(x_0)$ in \mathbb{R}^n and a diffeomorphism $(p: U(x_0) \rightarrow I_n$ of this neighborhood onto the standard n -dimensional cube $I_n = \{ t \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid |t_i| <$

$t^i, i=1, \dots, n$ } of the space R^n under which the image of the set $S \cap U(x_0)$ is the portion of the n -dimensional plane in R^n defined by the relations $t^{k+1} = 0, \dots, t^n = 0$ lying



We shall measure the degree of smoothness of the surface S by the degree of smoothness of the diffeomorphism p .

If we regard the variables t^1, \dots, t^n as new coordinates in a neighborhood of $U(x_0)$, Definition 1 can be rewritten briefly as follows: the set $S \subset R^n$ is a n -dimensional surface (n -dimensional submanifold) in R^n if for every point $x_0 \in S$ there is a neighborhood $U(x_0)$ and coordinates t^i in $U(x_0)$ such that in these coordinates the set $S \cap U(x_0)$ is defined by the relations $t^{k+1} = \dots = t^n = 0$.

The role of the standard n -dimensional cube in Definition 1 is rather artificial and approximately the same as the role of the standard size and shape of a page in a geographical atlas. The canonical location of the interval I^n in the coordinate system t^1, \dots, t^n is also a matter of convention and nothing

Notes

more, since any cube in \mathbb{R}^n can always be transformed into the standard n -dimensional cube by an additional linear diffeomorphism.

We shall often use this remark when abbreviating the verification that a set $S \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ is a surface in \mathbb{R}^n .

Let us consider some examples.

Example. The space \mathbb{R}^n itself is an n -dimensional surface of class C^∞ .

As

the mapping $(p : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n)$ here, one can take, for example, the mapping

2

$$C = \{ \arctan x_i \mid i=1, \dots, n \}$$

7T

Example . The mapping constructed in Example 1 also establishes that the

subspace of the vector space \mathbb{R}^n defined by the conditions $x_1 = \dots = x_n$

=

0 is a $^{n-1}$ -dimensional surface in \mathbb{R}^n (or a $^{n-1}$ -dimensional submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n).

Example . The set in \mathbb{R}^n defined by the system of relations

$$a_1 x_1 + \dots + a_n x_n + c = 0,$$

$$a_1^2 x_1^2 + \dots + a_n^2 x_n^2 + c = 0,$$

provided this system has rank n — &, is a $^{n-1}$ -dimensional submanifold of \mathbb{R}^n .

Indeed, suppose for example that the determinant is nonzero. Then the linear transformation

$$t_1 = a_1 x_1 + \dots + a_n x_n,$$

is obviously nondegenerate. In the coordinates t_1, \dots, t_n the set is defined by

the conditions $t_1 = \dots = t_n = 0$, already considered in Example 2.

Example The graph of a smooth function $x_n = f(x_1, \dots, x_{n-1})$ defined in a domain $G \subset \mathbb{R}^{n-1}$ is a smooth $(n-1)$ -dimensional surface in \mathbb{R}^n .

Indeed, setting

$$t_i = x_i \quad (i=1, \dots, n-1),$$

$$t^n = x^n - f(x^1, \dots, x^{n-1}),$$

we obtain a coordinate system in which the graph of the function has the equation $t^n = 0$.

Example . The circle $x^2 + y^2 = 1$ in \mathbb{R}^2 is a one-dimensional submanifold of

\mathbb{R}^2 , as is established by the locally invertible conversion to polar coordinates

(p, θ) studied in the preceding section. In these coordinates the circle has equation $p = 1$.

Example . This example is a generalization of Example and at the same time, as can be observed from Definition, gives a general form for the coordinate

expression of submanifolds of \mathbb{R}^n .

Let $F_i(x_1, \dots, x_n) \quad (i=1, \dots, n-k)$ be a system of smooth functions of rank $n-k$. We shall show that the relations

$$F_1(x_1, \dots, x_k, x_{k+1}, \dots, x_n) = 0,$$

(8.137)

$$F_{n-k}(x_1, \dots, x_k, x_{k+1}, \dots, x_n) = 0$$

define a k -dimensional submanifold S in \mathbb{R}^n .

Suppose the condition

$$dF_1 \quad dF_2 \quad \dots \quad dF_{n-k}$$

$$dx_1 \quad dx_2 \quad \dots \quad dx_k \quad dx_{k+1} \quad \dots \quad dx_n$$

$$(x_0)^0 = 0$$

Notes

$Q_{j_1, \dots, j_k} = Q_{j_1, \dots, j_k}$

$dx_1 \wedge \dots \wedge dx_n$

holds at a point $x_0 \in G \cap S$. Then by the inverse function theorem the transformation

$(t_i = x_i \quad (i=1, \dots, k),$

$(t_{k+1} = f_1(x_1, \dots, x_n), \dots, t_n = f_{n-k}(x_1, \dots, x_n))$

is a diffeomorphism of a neighborhood of this point.

In the new coordinates t_1, \dots, t_n the original system will have the form $t_{k+1} = \dots = t_n = 0$; thus, S is a k -dimensional smooth surface in \mathbb{R}^n .

Example. The set E of points of the plane \mathbb{R}^2 satisfying the equation $x^2 - y^2 = 0$ consists of two lines that intersect at the origin. This set is not a one-dimensional submanifold of \mathbb{R}^2 (verify this!) precisely because of this point of intersection.

If the origin $0 \in \mathbb{R}^2$ is removed from E , then the set $E \setminus \{0\}$ will now obviously satisfy Definition 1. We remark that the set $E \setminus \{0\}$ is not connected.

It consists of four pairwise disjoint rays.

Thus a k -dimensional surface in \mathbb{R}^n satisfying Definition 1 can happen to be a disconnected subset consisting of several connected components (and these components are connected k -dimensional surfaces). A surface in \mathbb{R}^n is often taken to mean a connected k -dimensional surface. Just now we shall be interested in the problem of finding extrema of functions defined on surfaces.

These are local problems, and therefore connectivity will not manifest itself in them.

Example. If a smooth mapping $f: G \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ of the domain $G \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ defined in coordinate form has rank k at the point $t_0 \in G$, then there exists a neighborhood $U(t_0) \subset G$ of this point whose image $f(U(t_0)) \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ is a smooth surface in \mathbb{R}^n .

Indeed, as already noted above, in this case relations can be replaced by the equivalent system

$$\begin{cases} x_{k+1} - p_{k+1} \\ \vdots \\ x_n - p_n \end{cases} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ \vdots \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ \vdots \\ x_k \end{pmatrix} \quad (8.139)$$

$$x_n = x_n(x_1, \dots, x_k)$$

in some neighborhood $U(t_0)$ of $t_0 \in G$. (For simplicity of notation, we let that the system f_1, \dots, f_{n-k} has rank k .) Setting

$$f_i(x_1, \dots, x_n) = x_{k+i} - f_i(x_1, \dots, x_k) \quad (i=1, \dots, n-k),$$

the set $f(U(t_0))$ is indeed a k -dimensional smooth surface in \mathbb{R}^n .

6.5 THE TANGENT SPACE

In studying the law of motion $x=x(t)$ of a point mass in \mathbb{R}^3 , starting from the relation

$$x(t) = x(0) + x'(0)t + o(t) \text{ as } t \rightarrow 0$$

and assuming that the point $t=0$ is not a critical point of the mapping

$\mathbb{R}^3 \ni x(t) \in \mathbb{R}^3$, that is, $x'(0) \neq 0$, we defined the line tangent to the

trajectory at the point $x(0)$ as the linear subset of \mathbb{R}^3 given in parametric form by the equation

$$x - x(0) = x'(0)t \quad \bullet$$

or the equation

Notes

$$x - x_0 = \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{t},$$

where $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{x}'(0)$ and \mathbf{t} is a direction vector of the line.

In essence, we did a similar thing in defining the tangent plane to the graph of a function $z = f(x, y)$ in \mathbb{R}^3 . Indeed, supplementing the relation $z = f(x, y)$ with the trivial equalities $x = x$ and $y = y$, we obtain a mapping $\mathbb{R}^2 \ni (x, y) \mapsto (x, y, f(x, y)) \in \mathbb{R}^3$ to which the tangent at the point (x_0, y_0, z_0)

is the linear mapping

$$\mathbf{L} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & f_x(x_0, y_0) \\ 0 & 1 & f_y(x_0, y_0) \end{pmatrix} : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^3.$$

$$\mathbf{z} - \mathbf{z}_0 = \mathbf{L}(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_0),$$

where $z_0 = f(x_0, y_0)$.

Setting $\mathbf{t} = (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_0, \mathbf{z} - \mathbf{z}_0)$ and $\mathbf{x} = (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_0, \mathbf{z} - \mathbf{z}_0) \in \mathbb{R}^3$ here, and denoting the Jacobi matrix in for this transformation by $\mathbf{x}'(0)$, we remark that its rank is two and that in this notation relation has the form

The peculiarity of relation is that only the last equality in the set of three equalities

$$\begin{cases} x - x_0 = x - x_0, \\ y - y_0 = y - y_0, \\ z - z_0 = f_x(x_0, y_0)(x - x_0) + f_y(x_0, y_0)(y - y_0), \end{cases} \quad (8.144)$$

$$z - z_0 = f_x(x_0, y_0)(x - x_0) + f_y(x_0, y_0)(y - y_0),$$

to which it is equivalent is a nontrivial relation. That is precisely the reason

it is retained as the equation defining the plane tangent to the graph of $z = f(x, y)$ at (x_0, y_0, z_0) .

This observation can now be used to give the definition of the k -dimensional plane tangent to a n -dimensional smooth surface $S \subset \mathbb{R}^n$.

It can be observed from Definition 1 of a surface that in a neighborhood of

each of its points $X_0 \in S$ a k -dimensional surface S can be defined parametrically, that is, using mappings $I_k \subset \mathbb{R}^k \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$.

Such a parametrization can be taken to be the restriction of the mapping $p : I_n \rightarrow U(x_0)$ to the k -dimensional plane $t_{k+1} = \dots = t_n = 0$.

Since p^{-1} is a diffeomorphism, the Jacobian of the mapping $\langle p^{-1} : I_n \rightarrow$

$U(x_0)$ is nonzero at each point of the cube I_n . But then the mapping $I_k \subset \mathbb{R}^k \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ obtained by restricting $\langle p^{-1}$ to this plane must also have rank k at each point of I_k .

Now setting $(t_1, \dots, t_k) = t \in I_k$ and denoting the mapping $I_k \subset \mathbb{R}^k \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ by $x = x(t)$, we obtain a local parametric representation of the surface S possessing the property expressed by (8.140), on the basis of which we take as the equation of the tangent space or tangent plane to the surface $S \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ at $x_0 \in S$.

Thus we adopt the following definition.

Definition. If a k -dimensional surface $S \subset \mathbb{R}^n$, $1 < k < n$, is defined parametrically in a neighborhood of $X_0 \in S$ by means of a smooth mapping

$(t_1, \dots, t_k) \mapsto x = (x_1, \dots, x_n)$ such that $X_0 = x(0)$ and the matrix $x'(0)$

has rank k , then the k -dimensional surface in \mathbb{R}^n defined parametrically by

the matrix equality is known the tangent plane or tangent space to the surface S at $x_0 \in S$.

In coordinate form the following system of equations corresponds to Eq.

$$x_1 - x_1^0 = \sum_{i=1}^k \alpha_i^1 t_i$$

$$\vdots$$

$$x_n - x_n^0 = \sum_{i=1}^k \alpha_i^n t_i$$

$$dt_1(0) t_1 + \dots + dt_k(0) t_k.$$

We shall denote the tangent space to the surface S at $x \in S$, as before,

by

$T_x S$.

Notes

An important and useful exercise, which the reader can do independently, is to prove the invariance of the definition of the tangent space and the verification that the linear mapping $t x'(0)$ tangent to the mapping $t x(t)$, which defines the surface S locally, provides a mapping of the space $= TR_q$ onto the plane $T_5x(o)$ (observe Problem 3 at the end of this section).

Let us now determine the form of the equation of the tangent plane to the n -dimensional surface S defined in R^n by the system. For definiteness we shall let that condition holds in a neighborhood of the point $X_0 \in S$.

Setting $(x_1, \dots, x_k) = u$, $(x_{k+1}, \dots, x_n) = v$, $(F_1, \dots, F_{n-k}) = F$, we write the system in the form

$$F(u, v) = 0,$$

6.6 DIFFERENTIAL CALCULUS IN SEVERAL VARIABLES

$$F'_v(u, v) \neq 0$$

Using the implicit function theorem, in a neighborhood of the point $(u_0, v_0) = (x_0, \dots, x_{k+1}, \dots, x_n)$ we pass from relation to the equivalent relation

$$v = f(u),$$

which, when we supplement it with the identity $u = u$, yields the parametric

representation of the surface S in a neighborhood of $X_0 \in S$:

On the basis of Definition we obtain from the parametric equation

$$u = U_0 + E^{-1}t,$$

$$v - v_0 = f'(u_0) \cdot t$$

of the tangent plane; here E is the identity matrix and $t = u - U_0$.

Just as was done in the case of the system we retain in the system only the nontrivial equation

$$v - v_0 = f'(u_0)(u - u_0)$$

which contains the connection of the variables x_1, \dots with the variables x_{c+1}, \dots, x_n that determine the tangent space.

Using the relation

$$f'(u_0) = -[F_i(u_0)]^{-1} [F_i(u_0)],$$

which follows from the implicit function theorem, we rewrite as

$$K(u_0, v_0)(u - u_0) + F'(u_0, v_0)(v - v_0) = 0,$$

from which, after returning to the variables $(x_1, \dots, x_n) = x$, we obtain the equation we are observing for the tangent space $TSX_q \subset M_n$, namely

$$F'(x_0)(x - x_0) = 0.$$

In coordinate representation Eq. is equivalent to the system of equations

$$i_0 \quad i_0$$

$$\wedge^0 \text{ or } X^* 1 - x_1 + \dots + \wedge^*(x_0)(x_n - x_0) = 0,$$

$$f_{p_1} - k \quad r_{p_1} - k$$

$$dx_1(x_0) \{ x_1 - X_q \} + \dots + dx_n(x_0) \{ x_n - x_0 \} = 0.$$

By hypothesis the rank of this system is $n - c$, and hence it defines a c -dimensional plane in R^n .

The affine equation is equivalent (given the point x_0) to the vector equation

$$F'(x_0)K = 0,$$

in which $x = x_0$.

Hence the vector v lies in the plane TSX_0 tangent at x_0 to the surface

$S \subset R^n$ defined by the equation $F(x) = 0$ if and only if it satisfies condition

Notes

Thus TSX_o can be regarded as the vector space consisting of the vectors \leq that satisfy

It is this fact that motivates the use of the term tangent space.

Let us now prove the following proposition, which we have already encountered

Proposition. The space TSX_o tangent to a smooth surface $S \subset M^n$ at a point

$x_o \in S$ consists of the vectors tangent to smooth curves lying on the surface

S and passing through the point x_o .

Proof Let the surface S be defined in a neighborhood of the point $x_o \in S$ by a system of equations, which we write briefly as

$$F(x) = 0,$$

where $F = (F_1, \dots, F_{n-k})$, $x = (x_1, \dots, x_n)$. Let $\gamma : I \rightarrow S$ be an arbitrary smooth path with support on S . Taking $J = \{ t \in \mathbb{R} \mid |t| < 1 \}$, we shall let that $\gamma(0) = x_o$. Since $\gamma(t) \in S$ for $t \in J$, after substituting $x(t)$ into Eq.

, we obtain

$$F(\gamma(t)) = 0$$

for $t \in J$. Differentiating this identity with respect to t , we find that

$$F'(\gamma(t)) \cdot \gamma'(t) = 0.$$

In particular, when $t=0$, setting $\leq = \gamma'(0)$, we obtain

$$K(x_o) \leq = 0,$$

that is, the vector \leq tangent to the trajectory at x_o (at time $t=0$) satisfies Eq. of the tangent space TSX_o .

We now show that for every vector \leq satisfying Eq. there exists a smooth path $\gamma : I \rightarrow S$ that defines a curve on S passing through x_o at $t=0$ and having the velocity vector \leq at time $t = 0$.

This will simultaneously establish the existence of smooth curves on S passing through x_0 , which we let implicitly in the proof of the first part of the proposition.

Suppose for definiteness that condition holds. Then, knowing the first k coordinates x_1, \dots, x_k , of the vector $x = (x_1, \dots, x_k, x_{k+1}, \dots, x_n)$, we determine the other coordinates x_{k+1}, \dots, x_n uniquely from Eq. (which is equivalent to the system). Thus, if we establish that a vector $x = (x_1, \dots, x_n)$ satisfies Eq. we can conclude that $x \in S$. We shall make use of this fact.

Again, as was done above, we introduce for convenience the notation $u = (x_1, \dots, x_k)$, $v = (x_{k+1}, \dots, x_n)$, $x = (x_1, \dots, x_n) = (u, v)$, and $F(x) = F(u, v)$. In the subspace $R^k \subset R^n$ of the variables x_1, \dots, x_k we choose a parametrically defined line

$$x_1 = x_1^0 + t \cdot \alpha_1,$$

$$\vdots$$

$$x_k = x_k^0 + t \cdot \alpha_k,$$

having direction vector $(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_k)$, which we denote. In more abbreviated

notation this line can be written as

$$u = u^0 + t \cdot \alpha.$$

Solving Eq. for v , by the implicit function theorem we obtain a smooth function, which, when the right-hand side of Eq. is substituted as its argument is taken account of, yields a smooth curve in R^n defined as follows:

$$u = u^0 + t \cdot \alpha,$$

$$t \in (-\epsilon, \epsilon) \subset R.$$

$$v = f(u^0 + t \cdot \alpha),$$

Since $F(u, f(u)) = 0$, this curve obviously lies on the surface S . Moreover, it is clear from Eqs. that at $t=0$ the curve passes through the point $(u^0, v^0) = (x_1^0, \dots, x_k^0, x_{k+1}^0, \dots, x_n^0) = x_0 \in S$.

Notes

Differentiating the identity

$$F(u(t), v(t)) = F(u_0 + \dot{u}t, v_0 + \dot{v}t) = 0$$

with respect to t , we obtain for $t=0$

$$F_u(u_0, v_0) \dot{u} + F_v(u_0, v_0) \dot{v} = 0,$$

where $\dot{u} = \dot{u}(0) = (c_{f+1}, \dots, \dot{u}_n)$. This equality shows that the vector \dot{u}

=

$(\dot{u}_1, \dot{u}_2, \dots, \dot{u}_k, \dots, \dot{u}_n)$ satisfies Eq. Thus by the remark

made above, we conclude that $\dot{u} = \dot{v}$. But the vector \dot{u} is the velocity vector

at $t=0$ for the trajectory. The proposition is now proved.

6.7 EXTREMA WITH CONSTRAINT

Statement of the Problem One of the most brilliant and well-known achievements of differential calculus is the collection of recipes it provides for finding the extrema of functions. The necessary conditions and sufficient differential tests for an extremum that we obtained from Taylor's theorem apply, as we have noted, to interior extrema.

In other words, these results are applicable only to the study of the behavior of functions $f: D \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ in a neighborhood of a point $x_0 \in D$, when the argument x can let any value in some neighborhood of x_0 in

\mathbb{R}^n . Frequently a situation that is more complicated and from the practical

point of view even more interesting arises, in which one observeks an extremum of

a function under certain constraints that limit the domain of variation of the

argument. A typical example is the isoperimetric problem, in which we observek

a body of maximal volume subject to the condition that its boundary surface

has a fixed area. To obtain a mathematical expression for such a problem that will be accessible to us, we shall simplify the statement and let that the problem is to choose from the set of rectangles having a fixed perimeter

$2p$ the one having the largest area a . Denoting the lengths of the sides of the

rectangle by x and y , we write

$$a(x, y) = xy,$$

$$x + y = p.$$

Thus we need to find an extremum of the function $a(x, y)$ under the condition that the variables x and y are connected by the equation $x +$

Notes

$$y=p.$$

Therefore, the extremum is being sought only on the set of points of \mathbb{R}^2 satisfying this relation. This particular problem, of course, can be solved without difficulty: it suffices to write $y=p - x$ and substitute this expression

into the formula for $a(x, y)$, then find the maximum of the function $x(p - x)$

by the usual methods. We needed this example only to explain the statement

of the problem itself.

In general the problem of an extremum with constraint usually amounts to finding an extremum for a real-valued function

$$y=f(x_1, \dots, x_n)$$

of n variables under the condition that these variables must satisfy a system

of equations

$$F_1(x_1, \dots, x_n)=0,$$

<

$$F_m(x_1, \dots, x_n)=0.$$

Since we are planning to obtain differential conditions for an extremum, we shall let that all these functions are differentiable and even continuously differentiable. If the rank of the system of functions F_1, \dots, F_m is $n - c$, conditions define a c -dimensional smooth surface S in \mathbb{R}^n , and

from the geometric point of view the problem of extremum with constraint

amounts to finding an extremum of the function f on the surface S . More precisely, we are considering the restriction $f|_S$ of the function f to the surface

S and observing an extremum of that function.

The meaning of the concept of a local extremum itself here, of course, remains the same as before, that is, a point $x_0 \in S$ is a local extremum of

on S , or, more briefly $f|_S$, if there is a neighborhood $U_S(x_0)$ of x_0 in $S \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ such that $f(x) > f(x_0)$ for any point $x \in U_S(x_0)$ (in which case x_0 is a local minimum) or $f(x) < f(x_0)$ (and then x_0 is a local maximum). If these inequalities are strict for $x \in U_S(x_0) \setminus \{x_0\}$, then the extremum, as before, will be known strict.

A Necessary Condition for an Extremum with Constraint

Theorem . Let $f : D \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be a function defined on an open set $D \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ and belonging to $C^1(D; \mathbb{R})$. Let S be a smooth surface in D .

A necessary condition for a point $x_0 \in S$ that is noncritical for f to be a local extremum of $f|_S$ is that

$$T_{S, x_0} \subset T_{N, x_0}$$

where T_{S, x_0} is the tangent space to the surface S at x_0 and T_{N, x_0} is the tangent space to the level surface $N = \{x \in D \mid f(x) = f(x_0)\}$ of f to which x_0 belongs.

We begin by remarking that the requirement that the point x_0 be noncritical for $f|_S$ is not an essential restriction in the context of the problem of finding an extremum with constraint, which we are discussing. Indeed, even

if the point $x_0 \in D$ were a critical point of the function $f : D \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ or an extremum of the function, it is clear that it would still be a possible or

actual extremum respectively for the function $f|_S$. Thus, the new element in

this problem is precisely that the function $f|_S$ can have critical points and extrema that are different from those of f .

Proof We choose an arbitrary vector $v \in T_{S, x_0}$ and a smooth path $x = x(t)$

Notes

on S that passes through this point at $t=0$ and for which the vector \dot{x} is the velocity at $t=0$, that is,

$$\dot{x}(0) = v.$$

If x_0 is an extremum of the function $f|_S$, the smooth function $f(x(t))$ must have an extremum at $t=0$. By the necessary condition for an extremum, its derivative must vanish at $t=0$, that is, we must have

$$\nabla f(x_0) \cdot v = 0.$$

Since x_0 is a noncritical point of f , condition is equivalent to the condition that $v \in T_{x_0}S$, for relation is precisely the equation of the tangent space $T_{x_0}S$.

Thus we have proved that $T_{x_0}S \subset T_{x_0}S$. \square

If the surface S is defined by the system of equations in a neighborhood of x_0 , then the space $T_{x_0}S$, as we know, is defined by the system of linear equations and, since every solution of is a solution of the latter equation

is a consequence

It follows from these considerations that the relation $T_{x_0}S \subset T_{x_0}S$ is equivalent to the analytic statement that the vector $\nabla f(x_0)$ is a linear combination of the vectors $\text{grad} F_i(x_0)$, ($i=1, \dots, m$), that is,

$$\nabla f(x_0) = \sum_{i=1}^m \lambda_i \text{grad} F_i(x_0)$$

$$\sum_{i=1}^m \lambda_i = 0$$

Taking account of this way of writing the necessary condition for an extremum of a function whose variables are connected by Lagrange proposed using the following auxiliary function when observing a constrained extremum:

$$L(x, \lambda) = f(x) - \sum_{i=1}^m \lambda_i F_i(x)$$

$$\sum_{i=1}^m \lambda_i = 0$$

in $n - m$ variables $(x, \lambda) = (x_1, \dots, x_m, \lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_m)$.

This function is known the Lagrange function and the method of using it is the method of Lagrange multipliers.

The function is convenient because the necessary conditions for an extremum of it, regarded as a function of $(x, A) = (x_1, \dots, x_m, A_1, \dots, A_m)$, are precisely

Indeed,

$$\nabla_x L(x, A) = 0$$

and

$$F_i(x) = 0 \quad (i=1, \dots, m).$$

Thus, in observing an extremum of a function whose variables are subject to the constraints one can write the Lagrange function with undetermined multipliers and look for its critical points. If it is possible to find $X_0 = (x_1, \dots, x_m)$ from the system without finding $A = (A_1, \dots, A_m)$, then, as far as the original problem is concerned, that is what should be done.

As can be observed from the multipliers $A_i (i=1, \dots, m)$ are uniquely determined if the vectors $\text{grad } F_i(x_0) (i=1, \dots, m)$ are linearly independent. The independence of these vectors is equivalent to the statement that the rank of the system is m , that is, that all the equations in this system are essential (none of them is a consequence of the others).

This is usually the case, since it is letd that all the relations are independent, and the rank of the system of functions F_1, \dots, F_m is m at every point $x \in X$.

The Lagrange function is often written as

$L(x, \lambda) = f(x) + \sum_{i=1}^m \lambda_i F_i(x)$,

$$L(x, \lambda) = f(x) + \sum_{i=1}^m \lambda_i F_i(x),$$

where

Notes

which differs from the preceding expression only in the inessential replacement of A_i by $-A_i$.

Example . Let us find the extrema of a symmetric quadratic form

n

$$f(x) = \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij} x_i x_j \quad (a_{ij} = a_{ji})$$

on the sphere

n

$$F(x) = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 = 1$$

$2=1$

6.8 SURFACES IN R^n AND CONSTRAINED EXTREMA

Let us write the Lagrange function for this problem

$$L(x, \lambda) = \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij} x_i x_j - \lambda \left(\sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 - 1 \right)$$

$$L(x, \lambda) = \sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij} x_i x_j - \lambda \left(\sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 - 1 \right)$$

$$i, j=1 \dots n$$

and the necessary conditions for an extremum of $L(x, \lambda)$, taking account of

the relation $\sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 = 1$:

$$dL = \sum_{i=1}^n \left(\frac{\partial L}{\partial x_i} - 2\lambda x_i \right) dx_i + \left(\sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 - 1 \right) d\lambda = 0$$

$$\left(\sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij} x_j - 2\lambda x_i \right) = 0 \quad (i=1, \dots, n),$$

<

$$Jf(x) = (E, T - i) = 0.$$

Multiplying the first equation by x_i and summing the first relation over i , we find, taking account of the second relation, that the equality

$$\sum_{i=1}^n$$

$$\sum_{i,j=1}^n a_{ij} x_i x_j - a = 0$$

$$i, j=1$$

must hold at an extremum.

The system minus the last equation can be rewritten as

$$\sum_{i=1}^n$$

$$d_{ij} x_i = \lambda (i=1, \dots, n),$$

$$\sum_{i=1}^n$$

from which it follows that λ is an eigenvalue of the linear operator A defined

by the matrix (a_{ij}) , and $x = (x_1, \dots, x_n)$ is an eigenvector of this operator corresponding to this eigenvalue.

Since the function which is continuous on the compact set $S = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 = 1\}$ must let its maximal value at some point, the system (1) must have a solution. Thus we have established along the way that every real symmetric matrix (a_{ij}) has at least one real eigenvalue. This is a result well-known from linear algebra, and is fundamental in the proof of the existence of a basis of eigenvectors for a symmetric operator.

To show the geometric meaning of the eigenvalue λ , we remark that if $\lambda > 0$, then, passing to the coordinates $t_i = x_i / \sqrt{\lambda}$ we find, instead of

$$\sum_{i=1}^n$$

$$\sum_{i=1}^n t_i^2 = 1,$$

$$\sum_{i=1}^n$$

and, instead of

Notes

$f_y = \lambda$.

$2 = 1$

n

But λ^2 is the square of the distance from origin to the point

$2 = 1$

$t = (t_1, \dots, t_n)$, which lies on the quadric surface. Thus if represents, for example, an ellipsoid, then the reciprocal $1/\lambda$ of the eigenvalue λ is the square of the length of one of its semi-axes.

This is a useful observation. It shows in particular that relations, which are necessary conditions for an extremum with constraint, are still not sufficient. After all, an ellipsoid in R^3 has, besides its largest and smallest semi-axes, a third semi-axis whose length is intermediate between the two, in any neighborhood of whose endpoint there are both points nearer to the origin and points farther away from the origin than the endpoint. This last becomes completely obvious if we consider the ellipses obtained by taking a section of the original ellipsoid by two planes passing through the intermediate-length semi-axis, one passing through the smallest semi-axis and the other through the largest. In one of these cases the intermediate axis will be the major semi-axis of the ellipse of intersection. In the other it will be the minor semi-axis.

To what has just been said we should add that if $1/\lambda$ is the length of this intermediate semi-axis, then, as can be observed from the canonical

equation of

an ellipsoid, λ will be an eigenvalue of the operator A . Therefore the system which expresses the necessary conditions for an extremum of the function $f|_S$ will indeed have a solution that does not give an extremum of the function.

The result obtained in Theorem (the necessary condition for an extremum with constraint) is illustrated. The first of these figures explains why the point of the surface S cannot be an extremum of $f|_S$ if S is not tangent to the surface $N = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid f(x) = f(x_0) = c_0\}$ at x_0 . It is letd here that $\text{grad } f(x_0) \neq 0$. This last condition guarantees that in a neighborhood of x_0 there are points of a higher, c_2 -level surface of the function f and also points of a lower, c_1 -level surface of the function.

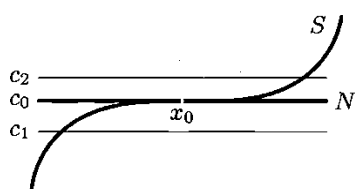
Since the smooth surface S intersects the surface N , that is, the c_0 -level surface of the smooth function f , it follows that S will intersect both higher and lower level surfaces of f in a neighborhood of x_0 . But this means that x_0 cannot be an extremum of $f|_S$.

The second figure shows why, when N is tangent to S at x_0 , this point can turn out to be an extremum. In the figure x_0 is a local maximum of $f|_S$.

These same considerations make it possible to sketch a picture whose analytic expression can show that the necessary criterion for an extremum is not sufficient.

Indeed, in accordance with we set, for example,

$$f(x, y) = y, \quad F(x, y) = x^3 - y = 0.$$



It is then obvious that y has no extremum at the point $(0, 0)$ on the curve $S \subset M^2$ defined by the equation $y=x^3$, even though this curve is tangent to the level line $f(x, y)=0$ of the function f at that point. We remark that $\text{grad } f(0, 0)=(0, 1)^0$.

It is obvious that this is essentially the same example that served earlier to illustrate the difference between the necessary and sufficient conditions for a classical interior extremum of a function.

6.9 SOME GEOMETRIC IMAGES CONNECTED WITH FUNCTIONS OF SEVERAL VARIABLES

The Graph of a Function and Curvilinear Coordinates Let $x, y,$ and z be Cartesian coordinates of a point in R^3 and Let $z=f(x, y)$ be a continuous function defined in some domain G of the plane R^2 of the variables x and y .

By the general definition of the graph of a function, the graph of the function $f: G \rightarrow R$ in our case is the set $S=\{(x, y, z) \in R^3 | (x, y) \in G, z=f(x, y)\}$ in the space R^3 .

It is obvious that the mapping $G \rightarrow S$ defined by the relation $(x, y) \mapsto (x, y, f(x, y))$ is a continuous one-to-one mapping of G onto S , by which one can determine every point of S by exhibiting the point of G corresponding to it, or, what is the same, giving the coordinates (x, y) of this point of G .

Thus the pairs of numbers $(x, y) \in G$ can be regarded as certain coordinates of the points of a set S - the graph of the function $z=f(x, y)$. Since the points of S are given by pairs of numbers, we shall conditionally agree to call S a two-dimensional surface in R^3 . (The general definition of a surface will be given later.)

If we define a path $T : I \rightarrow G$ in G , then a path $F \circ T : I \rightarrow S$ automatically appears on the surface S . If $x=x(t)$ and $y=y(t)$ is a parametric definition of the path T , then the path $F \circ T$ on S is given by the three functions $x=x(t)$, $y=y(t)$, $z=z(t)=f(x(t), y(t))$. In particular, if we set $x=x_0 + t$, $y=y_0$, $z=f(x_0 + t, y_0)$ on the surface S along which the coordinate $y=y_0$ of the points of S does not change. Similarly one can exhibit a curve $x=x_0$, $y=y_0 + t$, $z=f(x_0, y_0 + t)$ on S along which the first coordinate x_0 of the points of S does not change.

By analogy with the planar case these curves on S are naturally known coordinate lines on the surface S . However, in contrast to the coordinate lines in $G \subset \mathbb{R}^2$, which are pieces of straight lines, the coordinate lines on S are in general curves in \mathbb{R}^3 . For that reason, the coordinates (x, y) of points of the surface S are often known curvilinear coordinates on S .

Thus the graph of a continuous function $z=f(x, y)$, defined in a domain $G \subset \mathbb{R}^2$ is a two-dimensional surface S in \mathbb{R}^3 whose points can be defined by curvilinear coordinates $(x, y) \in G$.

At this point we shall not go into detail on the general definition of a surface, since we are interested only in a special case of a surface - the graph of a function. However, we let that from the course in analytic geometry the reader is well acquainted with some important particular surfaces in \mathbb{R}^3 (such as a plane, an ellipsoid, paraboloids, and hyperboloids).

The Tangent Plane to the Graph of a Function Differentiability of a function $z=f(x, y)$ at the point $(x_0, y_0) \in G$ means that

$$f(x, y) = f(x_0, y_0) + A(x - x_0) + B(y - y_0) + o(\sqrt{(x - x_0)^2 + (y - y_0)^2})$$

where A and B are certain constants.

In \mathbb{R}^3 Let us consider the plane

Notes

$$z = z_0 + A(x - x_0) + B(y - y_0),$$

where $z_0 = f(x_0, y_0)$. Comparing equalities, we observe that the graph of the function is well approximated by the plane in a neighborhood of the point (x_0, y_0, z_0) . More precisely, the point $(x, y, f(x, y))$ of

the graph of the function differs from the point $(x, y, z(x, y))$ of the plane by an amount that is infinitesimal in comparison with the magnitude $\sqrt{(x - x_0)^2 + (y - y_0)^2}$ of the displacement of its curvilinear coordinates

(x, y) from the coordinates (x_0, y_0) of the point (x_0, y_0, z_0) .

By the uniqueness of the differential of a function, the plane possessing this property is unique and has the form

$$z = f(x_0, y_0) + f_x(x_0, y_0)(x - x_0) + f_y(x_0, y_0)(y - y_0).$$

This plane is known the tangent plane to the graph of the function $z = f(x, y)$ at the point $(x_0, y_0, f(x_0, y_0))$.

Thus, the differentiability of a function $z = f(x, y)$ at the point (x_0, y_0) and the existence of a tangent plane to the graph of this function at the point

$(x_0, y_0, f(x_0, y_0))$ are equivalent conditions.

The Normal Vector for the tangent plane in the canonical form

$$f_x(x_0, y_0)(x - x_0) + f_y(x_0, y_0)(y - y_0) - (z - f(x_0, y_0)) = 0.$$

Check your Progress-1

Discuss Taylor's Theorem, Maxima And Minima

Discuss Differential Calculus In Several Variables

6.10 LET US SUM UP

In this unit we have discussed the definition and example of Taylor's Theorem, Maxima And Minima, Application To Maxima And Minima, Surfaces In R^n And The Theory Of Extrema With Constraint, The Tangent Space, Differential Calculus In Several Variables, Extrema With Constraint, Surfaces In R^n And Constrained Extrema, Some Geometric Images Connected With Functions Of Several Variables

6.11 KEYWORDS

1. Taylor's Theorem, Maxima And Minima: This is somewhat complicated, and the longest proof in either content here to carry the expansion out one more term than thus adding a third derivative and discussing the resulting expression.
2. Application To Maxima And Minima The equation above allows us to determine criteria guaranteeing that a point x_0 is a local maximum or local minimum for the function f
3. Surfaces In R^n And The Theory Of Extrema With Constraint To acquire an informal understanding of the theory of extrema with constraint, which is important in applications, it is useful to have some elementary information on surfaces (manifolds) in R^n .
4. The Tangent Space In studying the law of motion $x=x(t)$ of a point mass in R^3 , starting from the relation $x(t)=x(0)+x'(0)t+o(t)$ as $t \rightarrow 0$
5. Differential Calculus In Several Variables: Using the implicit function theorem, in a neighborhood of the point $(i=0, \wedge o)=(\#0' \dots >x_0>x_0+1> \dots >x_0)$ we Pass from relation to the equivalent relation.
6. Surfaces In R^n And Constrained Extrema Lagrange function

Notes

7. Some Geometric Images Connected With Functions Of Several Variables

8. The Graph of a Function and Curvilinear Coordinates Let x , y , and z be Cartesian coordinates of a point in R^3 and Let $z = f(x, y)$ be a continuous function defined in some domain G of the plane R^2 of the variables x and y .

6.12 QUESTIONS FOR REVIEW

Explain Taylor's Theorem, Maxima And Minima

Explain Differential Calculus In Several Variables

6.13 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

Taylor's Theorem, Maxima And Minima

(answer for Check your Progress-1

Q)

Differential Calculus In Several Variable

(answer for Check your Progress-1

Q)

6.14 REFERENCES

- Calculus of Several Variables
- Advance Calculus of Several Variables
- Analysis of Several Variables
- Application of Several Variables
- Function of Several Variables

UNIT - 7: A SUFFICIENT CONDITION FOR A CONSTRAINED EXTREMUM

STRUCTURE

7.0 Objectives

7.1 Introduction

7.2 A Sufficient Condition For A Constrained Extremum

7.3 Differential Calculus, Differentiable Functions

7.4 Functions Differentiable At A Point

7.5 The Tangent Line; Geometric Meaning Of The Derivative And Differential

7.6 The Role Of The Coordinate System

7.7 Let Us Sum Up

7.8 Keywords

7.9 Questions For Review

7.10 Answers To Check Your Progress

7.11 References

7.0 OBJECTIVES

After studying this unit, you should be able to:

Learn, Understand about A Sufficient Condition For A Constrained Extremum

Learn, Understand about Differential Calculus Differentiable Functions

Learn, Understand about Functions Differentiable At A Point

Notes

Learn, Understand about The Tangent Line; Geometric Meaning Of The Derivative And Differential

Learn, Understand about The Role Of The Coordinate System

7.1 INTRODUCTION

In mathematics advanced calculus whose aim is to provide a firm logical foundation of analysis of calculus and a course in linear algebra treats analysis in one variable & analysis in several variables

A Sufficient Condition For A Constrained Extremum, Differential Calculus Differentiable Functions, Functions Differentiable At A Point, The Tangent Line; Geometric Meaning Of The Derivative And Differential, The Role Of The Coordinate System

7.2 A SUFFICIENT CONDITION FOR A CONSTRAINED EXTREMUM

We now prove the following sufficient condition for the presence or absence of a constrained extremum.

Theorem. Let $f : D \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be a function defined on an open set $D \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ and belonging to the class $C^1(D; \mathbb{R})$; Let S be the surface in D defined by Eqs. where $F_i \in C^2(D; \mathbb{R})$ ($i=1, \dots, m$) and the rank of the system of functions $\{ F_1, \dots, F_m \}$ at each point of D is m .

Suppose that the parameters $\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_m$ in the Lagrange function

m

$$L(x) = L(x; \lambda) = f(x_1, \dots, x_n) - \sum_{i=1}^m \lambda_i F_i(x_1, \dots, x_n)$$

$n-m$

have been chosen in accordance with the necessary criterion for a constrained extremum of the function $f|_S$ at $x_0 \in G$

A sufficient condition for the point x_0 to be an extremum of the function $f|_S$ is that the quadratic form

$$f''(x_0)$$

$$\sim (x_0) \in \mathbb{R}^n$$

$$dx_i dx_j$$

be either positive-definite or negative-definite for vectors $v \in T_{x_0} S$.

If the quadratic form is positive-definite on $T_{x_0} S$, then x_0 is a strict local minimum of $f|_S$; if it is negative-definite, then x_0 is a strict local maximum.

A sufficient condition for the point x_0 not to be an extremum of $f|_S$ is that the form let both positive and negative values on $T_{x_0} S$.

Proof We first note that $L(x) = f(x)$ for $x \in G \subset S$, so that if we show that $x_0 \in G$

S is an extremum of the function $L|_S$, we shall have shown simultaneously that it is an extremum of $f|_S$.

By hypothesis, the necessary criterion for an extremum of $f|_S$ at x_0 is fulfilled, so that $\text{grad} L(x_0) = 0$ at this point. Hence the Taylor expansion of $L(x)$ in a neighborhood of $x_0 = (x_1, \dots, x_n)$ has the form

$$L(x) = L(x_0) + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i,j=1}^n \frac{\partial^2 L}{\partial x_i \partial x_j}(x_0) (x_i - x_{i0})(x_j - x_{j0}) + o(\|x - x_0\|^2)$$

$$L(x) - L(x_0) = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i,j=1}^n \frac{\partial^2 L}{\partial x_i \partial x_j}(x_0) (x_i - x_{i0})(x_j - x_{j0}) + o(\|x - x_0\|^2)$$

as $x \rightarrow x_0$.

We now recall that, in motivating Definition, we noted the possibility of a local (for example, in a neighborhood of $x_0 \in G \subset S$) parametric definition of a smooth k -dimensional surface S (in the present case, $k = n - m$).

In other words, there exists a smooth mapping

$$R^k(t_1, \dots, t_k) \rightarrow x = (x_1, \dots, x_n) \in G \subset \mathbb{R}^n$$

Notes

(as before, we shall write it in the form $x=x(t)$), under which a neighborhood of the point $0=(0, \dots, 0) \in \mathbb{R}^k$ maps bijectively to some neighborhood of X_0 on S , and $x(0)=x_0$.

We remark that the relation

$$x(t) - x(0) = O(\|t\|^4) + o(\|t\|) \text{ as } t \rightarrow 0,$$

which expresses the differentiability of the mapping $t \mapsto x(t)$ at $t=0$, is equivalent to the n coordinate equalities

$$x_i(t) - x_i(0) = \sum_{j=1}^k x'_{ij}(0) t_j + o(\|t\|) \quad (i=1, \dots, n),$$

in which the index a ranges over the integers from 1 to k and the summation is over this index.

It follows from these numerical equalities that

$$\|x(t) - x(0)\| = O(\|t\|) \text{ as } t \rightarrow 0$$

and hence

$$\|x(t) - x(0)\| = O(\|t\|) \text{ as } t \rightarrow 0.$$

Using relations, we find that as $t \rightarrow 0$

$$L(x(t)) - L(x(0)) = \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{\partial L}{\partial x_i}(x(0)) (x_i(t) - x_i(0)) + o(\|t\|^2)$$

Hence under the assumption of positive- or negative-definiteness of the form

$$\sum_{i,j=1}^n \frac{\partial^2 L}{\partial x_i \partial x_j}(x_0) x_i x_j$$

it follows that the function $L(x(t))$ has an extremum at $t=0$. If the form lets both positive and negative values, then $L(x(t))$ has no extremum at $t=0$. But, since some neighborhood of the point $0 \in \mathbb{R}^k$ maps to a neighborhood of $x(0)=x_0 \in S$ on the surface S under the mapping $t \mapsto x(t)$, we can conclude that the function $L|_S$ also will either have an extremum at x_0 of the same nature as the function $L(\#(\leq))$ or, like $L(\#(\leq))$, will not have an extremum.

Thus, it remains to verify that for vectors $\alpha \in G(TS_x)$ the expressions and are merely different notations for the same object.

Indeed, setting

$$\alpha = \dot{x}(0),$$

we obtain a vector α tangent to S at x_0 , and if $\alpha = (\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n)$, $x(t) = (x_1(t), \dots, x_n(t))$, and $t = (t_1, \dots, t_k)$, then

$$\alpha_j = \frac{dx_j}{dt}(0) \quad (j=1, \dots, n),$$

from which it follows that the quantities are the same

We note that the practical use of Theorem is hindered by the fact that only $k - n - m$ of the coordinates of the vector $\alpha = (\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n) \in G(TS_x)$ are independent, since the coordinates of α must satisfy the system defining the space TS_x . Thus a direct application of the Sylvester criterion to the quadratic form generally yields nothing in the present case the form can not be positive- or negative-definite on $TR_{\alpha=0}$ and yet be definite on TS_x . But if we express m coordinates of the vector α in terms of the other k coordinates by relations and then substitute the resulting linear forms into, we arrive at a quadratic form in k variables whose positive- or negative-definiteness can be investigated using the Sylvester criterion.

Let us clarify what has just been said by some elementary examples.

Example. Suppose we are given the function

$$f(x, y, z) = x^2 - y^2 + z^2$$

in the space R^3 with coordinates x, y, z . We observe an extremum of this function on the plane S defined by the equation

$$F(x, y, z) = 2x - y - 3 = 0.$$

Writing the Lagrange function

$$L(x, y, z) = (x^2 - y^2 + z^2) - \lambda(2x - y - 3)$$

and the necessary conditions for an extremum

Notes

$$2x - 2A = 0,$$

dL_n

$$t \sim -2y + A = 0,$$

dy

dL

dz

$$\hat{=} -\{2x - y - 3\} = 0,$$

we find the possible extremum $p = (2, 1, 0)$.

Next we find the form

$$f = (?)^* - (?)^* + (?)^*$$

We note that in this case the parameter A did not occur in this quadratic form, and so we did not compute it.

We now write the condition $\leq E$ TSP:

$$1 - \leq 2 = 0.$$

From this equality we find $\leq 2 = 2 \leq x$ and substitute it into the form after which it lets the form

where this time and ≤ 3 are independent variables.

This last form can obviously let both positive and negative values, and therefore the function $f \setminus s$ has no extremum at $p \in S$.

Example. Under the hypotheses of Example we replace R_3 by R_2 and the function /by

$$f(x, y) = x^2 - y^2,$$

retaining the condition

$$2x - y - 3 = 0,$$

which now defines a line S in the plane R^2 .

We find $p = (2, 1)$ as a possible extremum.

Instead of the form we obtain the form

$$(e_1)^2 - (\leq 2)^2$$

with the previous relation between and ≤ 2 .

Thus the form now has the form

$$-3(\wedge)^2$$

on TSP, that is, it is negative-definite. We conclude from this that the point $p=(2, 1)$ is a local maximum of $f|_S$.

The following simple examples are instructive in many respects. On them one can distinctly trace the working of both the necessary and the sufficient conditions for constrained extrema, including the role of the parameter and the informal role of the Lagrange function itself.

Example. On the plane R^2 with Cartesian coordinates (x, y) we are given the function

$$f(x, y) = x^2 + y^2.$$

Let us find the extremum of this function on the ellipse given by the canonical relation

$$x^2 + \frac{y^2}{a^2} = 1$$

$$y^2 = a^2(1 - x^2)$$

where $0 < a < b$.

It is obvious from geometric considerations that $\min f|_S = a^2$ and $\max f|_S = b^2$. Let us obtain this result on the basis of the procedures recommended

By writing the Lagrange function

$$L(x, y, \lambda) = (x^2 + y^2) - \lambda(x^2 + \frac{y^2}{a^2} - 1)$$

and solving the equation $dL=0$, that is, the system — — find the solutions

$$(x, y, \lambda) = (\pm a, 0, a^2), (0, \pm b, b^2).$$

Notes

Now in accordance with Theorem 2 we write and study the quadratic form

$\frac{d^2Z}{dx^2}$, the second term of the Taylor expansion of the Lagrange function in a neighborhood of the corresponding points:

$$J''_{xx} + \lambda \frac{d^2g}{dx^2}.$$

At the points $(\pm a, 0)$ of the ellipse S the tangent vector $\lambda = \lambda(x=2)$ has the form $(0, \lambda=2)$, and for $A=a^2$ the quadratic form lets the form

$$0 - \lambda = -2 < 0.$$

Taking account of the condition $0 < a < 6$, we conclude that this form is positive-definite and hence at the points $(\pm a, 0) \in S$ there is a strict local (and in this case obviously also global) minimum of the function $f|_S$, that is,

$$\min_{f|_S} = a^2.$$

Similarly we find the form

$$(-\lambda) \frac{d^2g}{dx^2} < 0$$

which corresponds to the points $(0, \pm b) \in S$, and we find $\max_{f|_S} = b^2$.

Remark. Note the role of the Lagrange function here compared with the role of the function f . At the corresponding points on these tangent vectors the differential of f (like the differential of L) vanishes, and the quadratic form

$|\frac{d^2f}{dx^2} = (C_1)^2 + (\lambda=2)^2$ is positive definite at whichever of these points it is computed. Nevertheless, the function $f|_S$ has a strict minimum at the points

$(\pm a, 0)$ and a strict maximum at the points $(0, \pm b)$.

To understand what is going on here, look again at the proof of Theorem. and try to obtain relation by substituting f for L in. Note that an additional term containing $f''(O)$ arises here. The reason it does not vanish is that, in contrast to dL the differential df of f is not identically zero at the corresponding points, even though its values are indeed zero on the tangent vectors (of the form $f'(O)$).

Example. Let us find the extrema of the function

$$f(x, y, z) = x^2 + y^2 + z^2$$

on the ellipsoid S defined by the relation

$$F(x, y, z) = \frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} + \frac{z^2}{c^2} - 1 = 0,$$

$$az > bz > c$$

where $0 < a < b < c$.

By writing the Lagrange function

$$L(x, y, z, \lambda) = (x^2 + y^2 + z^2) - \lambda \left(\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} + \frac{z^2}{c^2} - 1 \right)$$

in accordance with the necessary criterion for an extremum, we find the solutions of the equation $dL=0$, that is, the system $\frac{\partial L}{\partial X} = 0$:

$$(x, y, z, \lambda) = (\pm a, 0, 0, \frac{1}{2a^2}), (0, \pm b, 0, \frac{1}{2b^2}), (0, 0, \pm c, \frac{1}{2c^2}),$$

On each respective tangent plane the quadratic form

in each of these cases has the form

$$(1 - \frac{1}{2a^2})x^2 + (1 - \frac{1}{2a^2})y^2 - \frac{1}{2a^2}z^2, \quad (a)$$

$$+\frac{1}{2a^2}z^2 - \frac{1}{2a^2}x^2 - \frac{1}{2a^2}y^2$$

$$0 - \frac{1}{2b^2}x^2 - \frac{1}{2b^2}y^2 + (1 - \frac{1}{2b^2})z^2, \quad (c)$$

Since $0 < a < b < c$, it follows from Theorem which gives a sufficient criterion for the presence or absence of a constrained extremum, that one can conclude that in cases (a) and (c), we have found respectively $\min f = a^2$ and $\max f = c^2$, while at the points $(0, \pm b, 0) \in S$ corresponding to case

(b) the function $f|_S$ has no extremum. This is in complete agreement with the obvious geometric considerations stated in the discussion of the necessary criterion for a constrained extremum.

Certain other aspects of the concepts of analysis and geometry encountered in this section, which are sometimes quite useful, including the physical interpretation of the problem of a constrained extremum itself, as well as the necessary criterion for it as the resolution of forces at an equilibrium point and the interpretation of the Lagrange multipliers as the magnitude of the reaction of ideal constraints.

7.3 DIFFERENTIAL CALCULUS

DIFFERENTIABLE FUNCTIONS

Statement of the Problem and Introductory Considerations

Suppose, following Newton, 12 we wish to solve the Kepler problem of two bodies, that is, we wish to explain the law of motion of one celestial body m (a planet) relative to another body M (a star). We take a Cartesian coordinate system in the plane of motion with origin at M . Then the position of m at time t can be characterized numerically by the coordinates $(x(t), y(t))$ of the point in that coordinate system. We wish to find the functions $x(t)$ and $y(t)$.

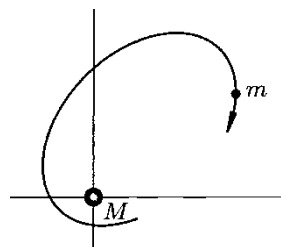


Fig. 5.1.

The motion of m relative to M is governed by Newton's two famous laws: the general law of motion

$$ma = F,$$

connecting the force vector with the acceleration vector that it produces via the coefficient of proportionality m - the inertial mass of the body and the law of universal gravitation, which makes it possible to find the gravitational action of the bodies m and M on each other according to the formula

$$F_{mM} = -\gamma \frac{mM}{r^2} \hat{r}$$

where r is a vector with its initial point in the body to which the force is applied and its terminal point in the other body and $|r|$ is the length of the vector r , that is, the distance between m and M .

Knowing the masses m and M , we can easily use to express the right-hand side in terms of the coordinates $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ of the body m at time t , and thereby take account of all the data for the given motion.

To obtain the relations on $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ contained in we must learn how to express the left-hand side of in terms of $x(t)$ and $y(t)$. Acceleration is a characteristic of a change in velocity $v(t)$. More precisely, it is simply the rate at which the velocity changes. Therefore, to solve the problem we must first of all learn how to compute the velocity $v(t)$ at time t possessed by a body whose motion is described by the radius-vector $r(t) = (x(t), y(t))$.

Thus we wish to define and learn how to compute the instantaneous velocity of a body that is implicit in the law of motion

To measure a thing is to compare it to a standard. In the present case, what can serve as a standard for determining the instantaneous velocity of motion

The simplest kind of motion is that of a free body moving under inertia. This is a motion under which equal displacements of the body in space (as vectors) occur in equal intervals of time. It is the so-known uniform (rectilinear) motion. If a point is moving uniformly, and $r(0)$ and $r(1)$ are its radius-vectors relative to an inertial coordinate system at times $t=0$ and $t=1$ respectively, then at any time t we shall have

$$r(t) - r(0) = v \cdot t,$$

where $v = r(1) - r(0)$. Thus the displacement $r(t) - r(0)$ turns out to be a linear function of time in this simplest case, where the role of the constant of proportionality between the displacement $r(t) - r(0)$ and the time t is played by the vector v that is the displacement in unit time. It is this vector that we call the velocity of uniform motion. The fact that the motion is rectilinear can be observed from the parametric representation

Notes

of the trajectory: $r(t) = r(0) + v \cdot t$, which is the equation of a straight line, as you will recall from analytic geometry.

We thus know the velocity v of uniform rectilinear motion given. By the law of inertia, if no external forces are acting on a body, it moves uniformly in a straight line. Hence if the action of M on m were to cease at time t , the latter would continue its motion, in a straight line at a certain velocity from that time on. It is natural to regard that velocity as the instantaneous velocity of the body at time t .

However, such a definition of instantaneous velocity would remain a pure abstraction, giving us no guidance for explicit computation of the quantity, if not for the circumstance of primary importance that we are about to discuss.

While remaining within the circle we have entered (logicians would call it a "vicious" circle) when we wrote down the equation of motion and then undertook to determine what is meant by instantaneous velocity and acceleration, we nevertheless remark that, even with the most general ideas about these concepts, one can draw the following heuristic conclusions. If there is no force, that is, $F=0$, then the acceleration is also zero. But if the rate of change $a(t)$ of the velocity $v(t)$ is zero, then the velocity $v(t)$ itself must not vary over time. In that way, we arrive at the law of inertia, according to which the body indeed moves in space with a velocity that is constant in time.

From this same Equation we can observe that forces of bounded magnitude are capable of creating only accelerations of bounded magnitude. But if the absolute magnitude of the rate of change of a quantity $P(t)$ over a time interval $[0, t]$ does not exceed some constant c , then, in our picture of the situation, the change $|P(t) - P(0)|$ in the quantity P over time t cannot exceed $c \cdot t$, that is, in this situation, the quantity changes by very little in a small interval of time. (In any case, the function $P(t)$ turns out to be continuous.)

Thus, in a real mechanical system the parameters change by small amounts over a small time interval.

In particular, at all times t close to some time t_0 the velocity $v(t)$ of the body m must be close to the value $v(t_0)$ that we wish to determine. But in that case, in a small neighborhood of the time t_0 the motion itself must differ by only a small amount from uniform motion at velocity $v(t_0)$, and the closer to t_0 , the less it differs.

If we photographed the trajectory of the body m through a telescope, depending on the power of the telescope the portion of the trajectory corresponds to a time interval so small that it is difficult to distinguish the actual trajectory from a straight line, since this portion of the trajectory really does resemble a straight line, and the motion resembles uniform rectilinear motion. From this observation, as it happens, we can conclude that by solving the problem of determining the instantaneous velocity (velocity being a vector quantity)

will at the same time solve the purely geometric problem of defining and finding the tangent to a curve (in the present case the curve is the trajectory of motion).

Thus we have observed that in this problem we must have $v(t) \approx v(t_0)$ for t close to t_0 , that is, $v(t) \approx v(t_0)$ as $t \rightarrow t_0$, or, what is the same, $v(t) = v(t_0) + o(1)$ as $t \rightarrow t_0$. Then we must also have

$$r(t) - r(t_0) \approx v(t_0) \cdot (t - t_0)$$

for t close to t_0 . More precisely, the value of the displacement $r(t) - r(t_0)$ is equivalent to $v(t_0)(t - t_0)$ as $t \rightarrow t_0$, or

$$r(t) - r(t_0) = v(t_0)(t - t_0) + o(v(t_0)(t - t_0)),$$

where $o(v(t_0)(t - t_0))$ is a correction vector whose magnitude tends to zero faster than the magnitude of the vector $v(t_0)(t - t_0)$ as $t \rightarrow t_0$. Here, naturally, we must except the case when $v(t_0) = 0$. So as not to exclude this case

from consideration in general, it is useful to observe that $|\frac{v(t) - v(t_0)}{t - t_0}| \rightarrow 0$ as $t \rightarrow t_0$. Thus, if $v(t_0) \neq 0$, then the quantity $\frac{v(t) - v(t_0)}{t - t_0}$

Notes

$o(t - t_0)$ is of the same order as $|t - t_0|$, and therefore $o(v(t_0)(t - t_0)) = o(t - t_0)$. Hence, instead of we can write the relation

$$r(t) - r(t_0) = v(t_0)(t - t_0) + o(t - t_0),$$

which does not exclude the case $v(t_0) = 0$. Thus, starting from the most general, and perhaps vague ideas about velocity, we have arrived at which the velocity must satisfy. But the quantity $v(t_0)$ can be found unambiguously

$$v(t_0) = \lim_{t \rightarrow t_0} \frac{r(t) - r(t_0)}{t - t_0}.$$

Therefore both the fundamental relation and the relation equivalent to it can now be taken as the definition of the quantity $v(t_0)$, the instantaneous velocity of the body at time

At this point we shall not allow ourselves to be distracted into a detailed discussion of the problem of the limit of a vector-valued function. Instead, we shall confine ourselves to reducing it to the case of the limit of a real valued function, which has already been discussed in complete detail. Since the vector $r(t) - r(t_0)$ has coordinates $(x(t) - x(t_0), y(t) - y(t_0))$, we have in a position to answer the question whether a pair of functions $(x(t), y(t))$ can describe the motion of the body m about the body M . To answer this question, one must find $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ and check whether they hold. The system is an example of a system of so-called differential equations. At this point we can only check whether a set of functions is a solution of the system. How to find the solution or, better expressed, how to investigate the properties of solutions of differential equations is studied in a special and, as one can now appreciate, critical area of analysis - the theory of differential equations.

The operation of finding the rate of change of a vector quantity, as has been shown, reduces to finding the rates of change of several numerical-valued functions - the coordinates of the vector. Thus we must first of all learn how to carry out this operation easily in the simplest case of real-valued functions of a real-valued argument, which we now take up.

7.4 FUNCTIONS DIFFERENTIABLE AT A POINT

We begin with two preliminary definitions that we shall shortly make precise.

Definition 0i. A function $f: E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ defined on a set $E \subset \mathbb{R}$ is differentiable at a point $a \in E$ that is a limit point of E if there exists a linear function $A \cdot (x - a)$ of the increment $x - a$ of the argument such that $f(x) - f(a)$ can be represented as

$$f(x) - f(a) = A \cdot (x - a) + o(x - a) \text{ as } x \rightarrow a, x \in E.$$

In other words, a function is differentiable at a point a if the change in its values in a neighborhood of the point in question is linear up to a correction that is infinitesimal compared with the magnitude of the displacement $x - a$ from the point a .

Remark. As a rule we have to deal with functions defined in an entire neighborhood of the point in question, not merely on a subset of the neighborhood.

Definition. The linear function $A \cdot (x - a)$ is known the differential of the function f at a . The differential of a function at a point is uniquely determined; for it follows from that

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{f(x) - f(a) - A(x - a)}{x - a} = 0 \quad \text{if } J_f(a) = A,$$

$$\exists \delta > 0 \text{ such that } \forall x \in X, |x - a| < \delta \implies \left| \frac{f(x) - f(a) - A(x - a)}{x - a} \right| < \epsilon$$

so that the number A is unambiguously determined due to the uniqueness of the limit.

Definition. The number

$$f'(a) = \lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{f(x) - f(a)}{x - a}$$

$$= \lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{f(x) - f(a)}{x - a}$$

is known the derivative of the function f at a .

Notes

Relation can be rewritten in the equivalent form

$$f(x) - f(a)$$

$$= f'(a)(x - a) + o(x - a),$$

where $o(x - a) \rightarrow 0$ as $x \rightarrow a, x \in E$, which in turn is equivalent to

$$f(x) - f(a) = f'(a)(x - a) + o(x - a) \text{ as } x \rightarrow a, x \in E.$$

Thus, differentiability of a function at a point is equivalent to the existence of its derivative at the same point.

If we compare these definitions with what was said in Subsect., we can conclude that the derivative characterizes the rate of change of a function at the point under consideration, while the differential provides the best linear approximation to the increment of the function in a neighborhood of the same point.

If a function $f: E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is differentiable at different points of the set E , then in passing from one point to another both the quantity A and the function $o(x - a)$ in Eq.(5.9) can change (a result at which we have already arrived explicitly). This circumstance should be noted in the very definition of a differentiable function, and we now write out this fundamental definition in full.

Definition . A function $f: E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ defined on a set $E \subset \mathbb{R}$ is differentiable at a point $x \in E$ that is a limit point of E if

$$f(x + h) - f(x) = A(x)h + o(\|x - h\|),$$

where $h \rightarrow 0, A(x)h$ is a linear function in h and $o(x; h) = o(h)$ as $h \rightarrow 0, x - h \in E$.

The quantities

$$\Delta x(h) := (x + h) - x = h$$

and

$$\Delta f(x; h) := f(x + h) - f(x)$$

are known respectively the increment of the argument and the increment of the function (corresponding to this increment in the argument).

They are often denoted (not quite legitimately, to be sure) by the symbols A_x and $A_{f(x)}$ representing functions of h .

Thus, a function is differentiable at a point if its increment at that point, regarded as a function of the increment h in its argument, is linear up to a correction that is infinitesimal compared to h as $h \rightarrow 0$.

Definition. The function $h \mapsto A(x)h$ of Definition which is linear in h , is known the differential of the function $f : E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ at the point $x \in E$ and is denoted $df(x)$ or $Df(x)$.

Thus, $df(x)(h) = A(x)h$.

From Definitions we have

$Af(x; h) - df(x)(h) = a(x; h)$,

and $a(x; h) = o(h)$ as $h \rightarrow 0$, $x + h \in E$; that is, the difference between the increment of the function due to the increment h in its argument and the value of the function $df(x)$, which is linear in h , at the same h , is an infinitesimal of higher order than the first in h .

For that reason, we say that the differential is the (principal) linear part of the increment of the function.

As follows from relation and Definition,

$A(x) = f'(x) = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h}$

$\frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} = A(x) + a(x; h)$

$x+h, x \in E$

and so the differential can be written as

$df(x)(h) = f'(x)h$.

In particular, if $f(x) = x$, we obviously have $f'(x) = 1$ and

$dx(h) = 1 \cdot h = h$,

Notes

so that it is sometimes said that "the differential of an independent variable equals its increment".

Taking this equality into account, we deduce from that

$$df(x)(h) = f'(x)dx(h),$$

that is,

$$d/Oz) = f(x)dx .$$

The equality should be understood as the equality of two functions of h . we obtain

that is, the function (the ratio of the functions $d f(x)$ and dx) is constant and equals $f'(x)$. For this reason, following Leibniz, we frequently denote the derivative by the symbol, alongside the notation $f'(x)$ proposed by Lagrange.

In mechanics, in addition to these symbols, the symbol $\dot{\varphi}(t)$ (read "phi-dot of t ") is also used to denote the derivative of the function $\varphi(t)$ with respect to time t .

7.5 THE TANGENT LINE; GEOMETRIC MEANING OF THE DERIVATIVE AND DIFFERENTIAL

Let $f: E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be a function defined on a set $E \subset \mathbb{R}$ and x_0 a given limit point of E . We wish to choose the constant c_0 so as to give the best possible description of the behavior of the function in a neighborhood of the point x_0 among constant functions. More precisely, we want the difference $f(x) - c_0$ to be infinitesimal compared with any nonzero constant as $x \rightarrow x_0$, $x \in E$, that is

$$f(x) = c_0 + o(1) \text{ as } x \rightarrow x_0, x \in E .$$

This last relation is equivalent to saying $\lim_{x \rightarrow x_0} f(x) = c_0$. If, in particular the function is continuous at x_0 , then $\lim_{x \rightarrow x_0} f(x) = f(x_0)$, and naturally

$$E \ni x \rightarrow x_0$$

$$C_0 = f(x_0).$$

Now Let us try to choose the function $C_0 + c\{x - x_0\}$ so as to have

$$f(x) = C_0 + c(x - x_0) + o(x - x_0) \text{ as } x \rightarrow x_0, x \in E.$$

This is obviously a generalization of the preceding problem, since the formula can be rewritten as

$$f(x) = C_0 + o((x - x_0)^\alpha) \text{ as } x \rightarrow x_0, x \in E.$$

It follows immediately from that $C_0 = \lim f(x)$, and if the

$$\exists \delta > 0$$

function is continuous at this point, then $C_0 = f(x_0)$.

If c_0 has been found, it then follows from that

$$o_i \rightarrow i \text{im}$$

$$\exists \delta > 0 \quad \forall x \in X \quad |x - x_0| < \delta$$

And, in general, if we were observing a polynomial

$$P_n(x; x_0) = C_0 + c_1(x - x_0) +$$

$$\forall c_n \{x - x_0\}^n \quad \exists \delta > 0 \text{ such that}$$

$$f(x) = C_0 + c_1(x - x_0) +$$

$$c_n(x - x_0)^n + o((x - x_0)^n)$$

$$\text{as } x \rightarrow x_0, x \in E,$$

we would find successively, with no ambiguity that

$$C_0 = \lim f(x),$$

$$\exists \delta > 0$$

$$c_i = \lim$$

$$\exists \delta > 0 \quad \forall x \in E$$

$$\wedge \quad f(x) = [C_0 + c_1(x - x_0) + \dots + c_n(x - x_0)^n + o((x - x_0)^n)]$$

Notes

$$C_n = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (r_{T \setminus n}) >$$

$$\langle \rightarrow x \rightarrow x_0 \rangle \wedge$$

assuming that all these limits exist. Otherwise condition cannot be fulfilled, and the problem has no solution.

If the function f is continuous at x_0 , it follows from, as already pointed out, that $C_0 = f(x_0)$, and we then arrive at the relation

$$f(x) - f(x_0) = c_1(x - x_0) + o(x - x_0) \text{ as } x \rightarrow x_0, x \in E,$$

which is equivalent to the condition that $f(x)$ be differentiable at x_0 .

From this we find

$$C_1 = \lim$$

$$E \ni x \rightarrow x_0 \in X \rightarrow X \ni x$$

We have thus proved the following proposition.

Proposition . A function $f : E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ that is continuous at a point $x_0 \in E$ that is a limit point of E admits a linear approximation if and only if it is differentiable at the point

The function

$$p(x) = C_0 + c_1(x - x_0)$$

with $C_0 = f(x_0)$ and $c_1 = f'(x_0)$ is the only function of the form.

Thus the function

$$p(x) = f(x_0) + f'(x_0)(x - x_0)$$

provides the best linear approximation to the function f in a neighborhood of x_0 in the sense that for any other function $q(x)$ of the form we have $f(x) - q(x) = o(x - x_0)$ as $x \rightarrow x_0, x \in E$.

The graph of the function is the straight line

$$y - f(x_0) = f'(x_0)(x - x_0),$$

passing through the point $(x_0, f(x_0))$ and having slope $f'(x_0)$.

Since the line provides the optimal linear approximation of the graph of the function $y=f(x)$ in a neighborhood of the point $(x_0, f(x_0))$, it is natural to make the following definition.

Definition . If a function $f : E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is defined on a set $E \subset \mathbb{R}$ and differentiable at a point $x_0 \in E$ the line defined is known the tangent to the graph of this function at the point $(x_0, f(x_0))$ illustrates all the basic concepts we have so far introduced in connection with differentiability of a function at a point: the increment of the argument, the increment of the function corresponding to it, and the value of the differential. The figure shows the graph of the function, the tangent to the graph at the point $P_0=(x_0, f(x_0))$ and for comparison, an arbitrary line (usually known as a secant) passing through P_0 and some point $P \in E$ of the graph of the function.

$f(x_0 + h)$

$f(x_0)$

x_0

$x_0 + h$ x

Definition . If the mappings $f : E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ and $g : E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ are continuous at a point $x_0 \in E$ that is a limit point of E and $f(x) - g(x) = o((x - x_0)^n)$ as $x \rightarrow x_0, x \in E$, we say that f and g have n th order contact at x_0 (more precisely, contact of order at least n).

For $n=1$ we say that the mappings f and g are tangent to each other at x_0 .

According to Definition the mapping f is tangent at x_0 to a mapping $g : E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ that is differentiable at that point.

We can now also say that the polynomial $P_n(x_0; x) = C_0 + c_1(x - x_0) + \dots + c_n(x - x_0)^n$ of relation has contact of order at least n with the function f .

Notes

The number $h = x - x_0$, that is, the increment of the argument, can be regarded as a vector attached to the point X_0 and defining the transition from x_0 to $x = x_0 + h$. We denote the set of all such vectors by $TR(x_0)$ or $TR(x_0/x_0)$. Similarly, we denote by $TR(y_0)$ or $TR(y_0/y_0)$ the set of all displacement vectors from the point y_0 along the y -axis. It can then be observed from the definition of the differential that the mapping

$$d f(x_0): TR(x_0) \rightarrow TR(f(x_0)),$$

defined by the differential $h \mapsto f'(x_0)h = df(x_0)(h)$ is tangent to the mapping

$$h \mapsto f(x_0 + h) - f(x_0) = \Delta f(x_0; h),$$

defined by the increment of a differentiable function.

ordinate of the graph of the function $y = f(x)$ as the argument passes from x_0 to $x_0 + h$ then the differential gives the increment in the ordinate of the tangent to the graph of the function for the same increment h in the argument.

7.6 THE ROLE OF THE COORDINATE SYSTEM

The analytic definition of a tangent can be the cause of some vague uneasiness. We shall try to state what it is exactly that makes one uneasy. However, we shall first point out a more geometric construction of the tangent to a curve at one of its points P_0 .

Take an arbitrary point P of the curve different from P_0 . The line determined by the pair of points P_0 and P , as already noted, is known as a secant in relation to the curve. We now force the point P to approach P_0 along the curve. If the secant tends to some limiting position as we do so, that limiting position of the secant is the tangent to the curve at P_0 . Despite its intuitive nature, such a definition of the tangent is not available to us at the moment, since we do not know what a curve is, what it means to say that "a point tends to another point along a curve",

and finally, in what sense we are to interpret the phrase "limiting position of the secant".

Rather than make all these concepts precise, we point out a fundamental difference between the two definitions of tangent that we have introduced. The second was purely geometric, unconnected (at least until it is made more precise) with any coordinate system. In the first case, however, we have defined the tangent to a curve that is the graph of a differentiable function in some coordinate system. The question naturally arises whether, if the curve is written in a different coordinate system, it might not cease to be differentiable, or might be differentiable but yield a different line as tangent when the computations are carried out in the new coordinates.

This question of invariance, that is, independence of the coordinate system, always arises when a concept is introduced using a coordinate system.

The question applies in equal measure to the concept of velocity, which we discussed in Subsect. and which as we have mentioned already, includes the concept of a tangent.

Points, vectors, lines, and so forth have different numerical characteristics in different coordinate systems (coordinates of a point, coordinates of a vector, equation of a line). However, knowing the formulas that connect two coordinate systems, one can always determine from two numerical representations of the same type whether or not they are expressions for the same geometric object in different coordinate systems. Intuition suggests that the procedure for defining velocity described in Subsect. leads to the same vector independently of the coordinate system in which the computations are carried out. At the appropriate time in the study of functions of several variables we shall give a detailed discussion of questions of this sort. The invariance of the definition of velocity with respect to different coordinate systems will be verified in the next section.

Before passing to the study of specific examples, we now summarize some of the results.

Notes

We have encountered the problem of describing mathematically the instantaneous velocity of a moving body.

This problem led us to the problem of approximating a given function in the neighborhood of a given point by a linear function, which on the geometric level led to the concept of the tangent. Functions describing the motion of a real mechanical system are led to admit such a linear approximation.

In this way we have distinguished the class of differentiable functions in the class of all functions.

The concept of the differential of a function at a point has been introduced. The differential is a linear mapping defined on displacements from the point under consideration that describes the behavior of the increment of a differentiable function in a neighborhood of the point, up to a quantity that is infinitesimal in comparison with the displacement.

The differential $df(x_0)h = f'(x_0)h$ is completely determined by the number $f'(x_0)$, the derivative of the function f at X_0 , which can be found by taking the limit

$$\frac{f(x_0 + h) - f(x_0)}{h} \text{ as } h \rightarrow 0$$

$$\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x_0 + h) - f(x_0)}{h} = f'(x_0)$$

The physical meaning of the derivative is the rate of change of the quantity $f(x)$ at time x_0 ; its geometrical meaning is the slope of the tangent to the graph of the function $y=f(x)$ at the point $(x_0, f(x_0))$.

Some Examples

Example. Let $f(x) = \sin x$. We shall show that $f'(x) = \cos x$.

Proof.

$$\frac{\sin(x+h) - \sin x}{h} = \frac{2 \sin\left(\frac{h}{2}\right) \cos\left(x + \frac{h}{2}\right)}{h}$$

$$\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin(x+h) - \sin x}{h} = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{2 \sin\left(\frac{h}{2}\right) \cos\left(x + \frac{h}{2}\right)}{h} = \cos x$$

$$\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin(x+h) - \sin x}{h} = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{2 \sin\left(\frac{h}{2}\right) \cos\left(x + \frac{h}{2}\right)}{h} = \cos x$$

1.

$$\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin(x+h) - \sin x}{h} = \cos x$$

$$= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \cos \left[x - \frac{h}{2} \right] \cdot \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin(x+h) - \sin(x-h)}{h} = \cos x \cdot 2 \cos x = 2 \cos^2 x$$

$$\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin(x+h) - \sin(x-h)}{h} = 2 \cos x$$

Here we have used the theorem on the limit of a product, the continuity of the function $\cos x$, the equivalence $\sin t \sim t$ as $t \rightarrow 0$, and the theorem on the limit of a composite function.

Example. We shall show that $\cos' x = -\sin x$.

Proof.

$$\cos(x+h) - \cos x = -2 \sin\left(\frac{h}{2}\right) \sin\left(x + \frac{h}{2}\right)$$

$$\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{\cos(x+h) - \cos x}{h} = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{-2 \sin\left(\frac{h}{2}\right) \sin\left(x + \frac{h}{2}\right)}{h}$$

$$= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{-2 \sin\left(\frac{h}{2}\right)}{h} \cdot \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \sin\left(x + \frac{h}{2}\right)$$

$$= -\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin\left(\frac{h}{2}\right)}{\frac{h}{2}} \cdot \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \sin\left(x + \frac{h}{2}\right)$$

$$= -1 \cdot \sin x = -\sin x$$

$$\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{\cos(x+h) - \cos x}{h} = -\sin x$$

$$\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{\cos(x+h) - \cos x}{h} = -\sin x$$

$$= -\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \sin \left[x - \frac{h}{2} \right] \cdot \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin(x+h) - \sin(x-h)}{h} = -\sin x \cdot 2 \cos x = -2 \sin x \cos x$$

$$\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin(x+h) - \sin(x-h)}{h} = 2 \cos x$$

Example. We shall show that if $f(t) = r \cos at$, then $f'(t) = -ra \sin at$.

$$\text{Proof. } \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{r \cos a(x+h) - r \cos ax}{h} = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{-2r \sin\left(\frac{ah}{2}\right) \sin\left(x + \frac{ah}{2}\right)}{h}$$

$$= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{-2r \sin\left(\frac{ah}{2}\right)}{h} \cdot \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \sin\left(x + \frac{ah}{2}\right)$$

$$= -r \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin\left(\frac{ah}{2}\right)}{\frac{ah}{2}} \cdot \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \sin\left(x + \frac{ah}{2}\right)$$

Notes

h

$h \rightarrow 0$ h

$\cdot f h \sin(\wedge)$ \cdot

$= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \sin w[t - f] \cdot \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{1}{h} = \dots$ □

$h^2 \rightarrow 0$

Example. The instantaneous velocity and instantaneous acceleration of a point mass. Suppose a point mass is moving in a plane and that in some given coordinate system its motion is described by differentiate functions of time

$X=X(t), y=y(t)$

or, what is the same, by a vector

$r(t)=(x(t), y(t))$.

As we have explained in Subject., the velocity of the point at time t is the vector

$v(t)=r'(t)=(x'(t), y'(t))$,

where $x'(t)$ and $y'(t)$ are the derivatives of $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ with respect to time t .

The acceleration $a(t)$ is the rate of change of the vector $v(t)$, so that

$a(t)=v'(t)=r''(t)=(x''(t), y''(t))$,

where $x''(t)$ and $y''(t)$ are the derivatives of the functions $x'(t)$ and $y'(t)$ with respect to time, the so-known second derivatives of $x(t)$ and $y(t)$.

Thus, in the sense of the physical problem, functions $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ that describe the motion of a point mass must have both first and second derivatives.

In particular, Let us consider the uniform motion of a point along a circle of radius r . Let ω be the angular velocity of the point, that is, the

magnitude

of the central angle over which the point moves in unit time.

In Cartesian coordinates (by the definitions of the functions \cos and \sin) this motion is written in the form

$$r(t) = (r \cos(ut + a), r \sin(ut + a)),$$

and if $r(0) = (r, 0)$, it takes the form

$$r(t) = (r \cos ut, r \sin ut).$$

Without loss of generality in our subsequent deductions, for the sake of brevity, we shall let that $r(0) = (r, 0)$.

$$v(t) = r'(\leq) = (-ru \sin ut, ru \cos ut).$$

From the computation of the inner product

$$(v(t), r(t)) = -r^2 u \sin ut \cos ut + r^2 u \cos ut \sin ut = 0,$$

as one should expect in this case, we find that the velocity vector $v(t)$ is orthogonal to the radius-vector $r(\leq)$ and is therefore directed along the tangent

to the circle.

Next, for the acceleration, we have

$$a(\leq) = v'(t) = r''(t) = (-ru^2 \cos ut, -ru^2 \sin ut),$$

that is, $a(t) = -u^2 r(\leq)$, and the acceleration is thus indeed centripetal, since

it has the direction opposite to that of the radius-vector $r(\leq)$.

Moreover,

$$|a(\leq)| = u^2 |r(\leq)| = u^2 r = \frac{v^2}{r},$$

where $v = |v(t)|$.

Notes

Starting from these formulas, Let us compute, for example, the speed of a low-altitude satellite of the Earth. In this case r equals the radius of the earth,

that is, $r=6400$ km, while $|a| = g \approx 10 \text{ m/s}^2$ is the acceleration of free fall at the surface of the earth.

Thus, $v^2 = |a|r = 10 \text{ m/s}^2 \times 64 \cdot 10^5 \text{ m} = 64 \cdot 10^6 \text{ (m/s)}^2$, and so $v \approx 8 \cdot 10^3 \text{ m/s}$.

Example. The optic property of a parabolic mirror. Let us consider the parabola $y = x^2$ ($p > 0$, observe Fig. 5.4), and construct the tangent to it at

the point $(x_0, y_0) = (x_0, x_0^2)$.

Since $f(x) = x^2$, we have

$$f'(x_0) = \lim_{x \rightarrow x_0} \frac{x^2 - x_0^2}{x - x_0} = \lim_{x \rightarrow x_0} (x + x_0) = 2x_0.$$

$$y - y_0 = 2x_0(x - x_0)$$

Hence the required tangent has the equation

$$y - y_0 = 2x_0(x - x_0)$$

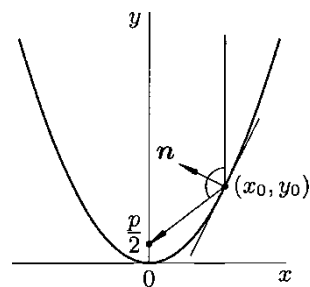
$$y - x_0^2 = 2x_0(x - x_0)$$

or

$$-x_0(x - x_0) - (y - y_0) = 0,$$

P

where $y_0 = x_0^2$.



The vector $n =$ as can be observed from this last equation, is

orthogonal to the line whose equation. We shall show that the vectors $e_y = (0, 1)$ and $e_x = (1, 0)$ form equal angles with n . The vector e_y is a unit vector directed along the y -axis, while e_x is directed from the point of tangency $(x_0, y_0) = (x_0, 2f - x_0^2)$ to the point $(0, f)$ which is the focus of the parabola. Thus we have shown that a wave source located at the point $(0, f)$, the focus of the parabola, will emit a ray parallel to the axis of the mirror (the y -axis), and that a wave arriving parallel to the axis of the mirror will pass through the focus.

Example. With this example we shall show that the tangent is merely the best linear approximation to the graph of a function in a neighborhood of the point of tangency and does not necessarily have only one point in common with the curve, as was the case with a circle, or in general, with convex curves.

(For convex curves we shall give a separate discussion.)

Let the function be given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 \sin \frac{1}{x}, & \text{if } x \neq 0, \\ 0, & \text{if } x = 0. \end{cases}$$

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 \sin \frac{1}{x}, & \text{if } x \neq 0, \\ 0, & \text{if } x = 0. \end{cases}$$

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 \sin \frac{1}{x}, & \text{if } x \neq 0, \\ 0, & \text{if } x = 0. \end{cases}$$

The graph of this function is shown by the thick line

Notes

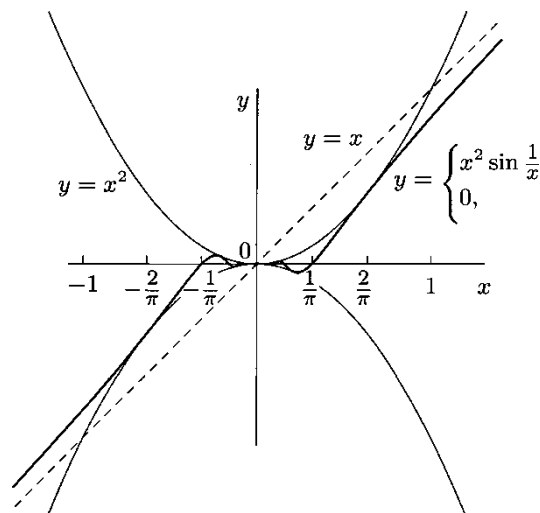


Fig. 5.5.

Let us find the tangent to the graph at the point $(0, 0)$. Since

$$f(x) = x^2 \sin \frac{1}{x}$$

$$f'(0) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x) - f(0)}{x - 0} = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} x \sin \frac{1}{x} = 0,$$

$$a \rightarrow 0 \quad x \rightarrow 0$$

the tangent has the equation $y - 0 = 0 \cdot (x - 0)$, or simply $y = 0$.

Thus, in this example the tangent is the x -axis, which the graph intersects infinitely many times in any neighborhood of the point of tangency.

By the definition of differentiability of a function $f: E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ at a point $x_0 \in E$, we have

$$f(x) - f(x_0) = A(x - x_0) + o(x - x_0) \text{ as } x \rightarrow x_0, x \in E.$$

Since the right-hand side of this equality tends to zero as $x \rightarrow x_0, x \in E$, it follows that $\lim_{x \rightarrow x_0} f(x) = f(x_0)$, so that a function that is differentiable

$$\exists \delta > 0$$

at a point is necessarily continuous at that point.

We shall show that the converse, of course, is not always true.

Example. Let $f(x) = |x|$. Then at the point $x_0 = 0$ we have

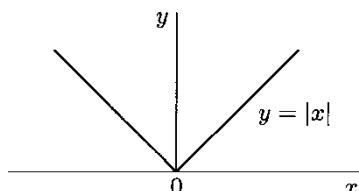
$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x) - f(0)}{x - 0} = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{|x|}{x} = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \begin{cases} 1, & x > 0 \\ -1, & x < 0 \end{cases}$$

$$x \rightarrow x_0 \rightarrow 0 \quad X \rightarrow X_0 \quad x \rightarrow 0 \quad x \rightarrow 0 \quad x \rightarrow 0 \quad x$$

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow x_0} \frac{f(x) - f(x_0)}{x - x_0} = \lim_{x \rightarrow x_0} \frac{1}{x} = \frac{1}{x_0}$$

$$x \rightarrow x_0 \rightarrow 0 \quad X \rightarrow X_0 \quad a \rightarrow 0 \quad x \rightarrow 0 \quad z \rightarrow 0 \quad x$$

Consequently, at this point the function has no derivative and hence is not differentiable at the point.



Example. We shall show that $e^{x+h} - e^x = e^x h + o(h)$ as $h \rightarrow 0$.

Thus, the function $\exp(x) = e^x$ is differentiable and $d\exp(x) = \exp(x)dx$, or $e^x dx = e^x dx$, and therefore $\exp'(x) = \exp(x)$, or $e^x = e^x$.

Proof.

$$e^{x+h} - e^x = e^x(e^h - 1) = e^x(h + o(h)) = e^x h + o(h)$$

Here we have used the formula $e^h - 1 = h + o(h)$

Example. If $a > 0$, then $a^{x+h} - a^x = a^x(\ln a)h + o(h)$ as $h \rightarrow 0$. Thus $d a^x = a^x(\ln a)dx$ and $\frac{d}{dx} a^x = a^x \ln a$.

Proof.

$$a^{x+h} - a^x = a^x(a^h - 1) = a^x(e^{h \ln a} - 1) = a^x(h \ln a + o(h \ln a)) = a^x(\ln a)h + o(h)$$

Example. If $x \neq 0$, then $\ln|x+a| - \ln|x| = \frac{a}{x} + o\left(\frac{1}{x}\right)$ as $x \rightarrow \infty$. Thus $d \ln|x| = \frac{1}{x} dx$ and $\frac{d}{dx} \ln|x| = \frac{1}{x}$.

Proof.

h

$$\ln|x+h| - \ln|x| = \ln\left|1 + \frac{h}{x}\right| = \frac{h}{x} + o\left(\frac{1}{x}\right)$$

x

Notes

For $|t| < |x|$ we have $|1 - f| = 1 - f$ and so for sufficiently small values of h we can write

$$\ln|x+h| - \ln|x| = \ln\left(1 + \frac{h}{x}\right) = \frac{h}{x} + o\left(\frac{h}{x}\right)$$

as $h \rightarrow 0$. Here we have used the relation $\ln(1 - f) = -f - o(f)$ as $f \rightarrow 0$,

Example. If $x \neq 0$ and $0 < a < 1$, then $\log_a|x+h| - \log_a|x| = \frac{h}{x} + o\left(\frac{h}{x}\right)$ as $h \rightarrow 0$. Thus, $d \log_a|x| = \frac{1}{x} dx$ and $d \log_a|x|^a = \frac{1}{x} dx$.

Proof.

$$\begin{aligned} \log_a|x+h| - \log_a|x| &= \frac{\ln|x+h| - \ln|x|}{\ln a} \\ &= \frac{\ln\left(1 + \frac{h}{x}\right)}{\ln a} = \frac{\frac{h}{x} + o\left(\frac{h}{x}\right)}{\ln a} \\ &= \frac{h}{x \ln a} + o\left(\frac{h}{x}\right) \end{aligned}$$

Here we have used the formula for transition from one base of logarithms

Check your Progress-1

Discuss A Sufficient Condition For A Constrained Extremum

Discuss Functions Differentiable At A Point

7.7 LET US SUM UP

In this unit we have discussed the definition and example of A Sufficient Condition For A Constrained Extremum, Differential Calculus, Differentiable Functions, Functions Differentiable At A Point, The Tangent Line; Geometric Meaning Of The Derivative And Differential, The Role Of The Coordinate System

7.8 KEYWORDS

1. Differential Calculus, Differentiable Functions Statement of the Problem and Introductory Considerations.
2. Functions Differentiable At A Point: We begin with two preliminary definitions that we shall shortly make precise.
3. The Tangent Line; Geometric Meaning Of The Derivative And Differential Let $f: E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be a function defined on a set $E \subset \mathbb{R}$ and x_0 a given limit point of E .
4. The Role Of The Coordinate System : The analytic definition of a tangent can be the cause of some vague uneasiness. We shall try to state what it is exactly that makes one uneasy. However, we shall first point out a more geometric construction of the tangent to a curve at one of its points P_0 .

7.9 QUESTIONS FOR REVIEW

Explain A Sufficient Condition For A Constrained Extremum

Explain Functions Differentiable At A Point

7.10 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

Notes

A Sufficient Condition For A Constrained Extremum

(answer for Check your Progress-1 Q)

Functions Differentiable At A Point

(answer for Check your Progress-1

Q)

7.11 REFERENCES

- Real Several Variables
- Elementary Variables
- Calculus of Several Variables
- Advance Calculus of Several Variables